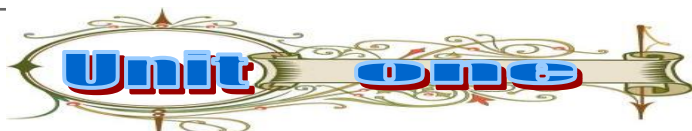


سلسلة



For 1st Sec. & 1 st term

Mr El Sebaei Atteya



Vocabulary

ecotourism	السياحة البيئية	Popular with	محبوب	forest	الغابة
endangered	معرض للخطر	destination	جهة سفر	volunteer	متطوع - يتطوع
isolated	معزول	wildlife	الحياة البرية	hard work	عمل شاق
Impact (on)	تأثير	including	يشتمل علي	remote	مكان
unique	فريد من نوعه	dragon	تنين	hill	تل
sustainable	مستدام	sand	الرمل	fortunately	لحسن الحظ
environment	البيئة	Reason for	سبب	warmer	أكثر دفئا
materials	مواد خام	bring	يحضر	souvenir	هدية
animal	حيوان	rebuild	يعيد بناء	wind	الرياح
beach	شاطيء	path	ممر	blow	تهب
coast	ساحل	eco-tourists	سياح مهتمين بالبيئة	encourage	يشجع
conservation	المحافظة علي البيئة	traditional	تقليدي	advantage	ميزه
design	يصمم	introduce	يقدم	together	معا
educate	يعلم	laws	قوانين	progress	تقدم
tourist	سائح	increase	يزداد	balcony	بلكونه
protect	يحمي	pollution	تلوث	brilliant	لامع - مشرق
ecosystem	النظام البيئي	otherwise	و اما	load	يحمل - حمل
exist	يوجد	industry	الصناعة	weather	الطقس
plaza	مجمع تجاري - ساحه	orangutan	غوريلا	spend	يقضي
Lemurs	نوع من القروء	spider	عنكبوت	excited	منفعل
stuck	عالق - مقيد	lean	يميل - ينحني	teenager	مراهق
limited	محدود	swell up	يتورم	create	يخلق - يبدع
develop	يطور	trek	يقوم برحلة مشي	relaxing	مسترخي
The Red Sea	البحر الاحمر	spicy	متبل - حار	amazing	مذهل
friendly	ودود	conservationist	المحافظ علي البيئة	underwater	تحت المياه
natural	طبيعي	rainforests	غابات مطيره	ancient	قديم
avoid	يتجنب	Bite (bit-bitten)	يعض	temple	معبد
damage	يتلف	get lost	يتوه	actually	بالفعل
coral reefs	الشعب	cycle	يركب دراجه	fascinate	يبهر
island	جزيره	break	يكسر	bored	يشعر بالملل
sight	منظر - النظر	crocodile	تمساح	awful	مخيف
giant	عملاق	grandparents	الاجداد	disconnected	منعزل - منفصل
turtle	سحلفاه	arrange	يعد - يجهز	village	قرية
resort	منتجع - مصيف	university	الجامعه	tiny	صغير
garden	حديقته	order	يامر - طلب	steal	يسرق
vegetables	خضار	support	يؤيد - يساند	victim	ضحيه
lettuce	خس	a bit = a little	قليل	upset	منزعج
grow	يزرع - ينمو	airport	مطار	exotic	غريب - شاذ
sunbathe	ياخذ حمام شمس	quiet	هاديء	crowded	مزدحم
programme	برنامج	peaceful	مسالم	modern	حديث
expect	يتوقع	Europe	اوربا	active	نشط
during	اثناء	restaurant	مطعم	noisy	مزعج
The locals	السكان	gardening	الحداثق - التشجير	cure for	عالج لـ
respect	يحترم - احترام	pros and cons	مميزات و عيوب	beauty	جمال
castle	قلعه	clear	واضح - يبريء	council	مجلس

Definitions

lean	To bend or move from a vertical position	ينحني - يميل
-------------	---	---------------------

ecotourism	A type of holiday that helps local people and doesn't damage the natural environment.	السياحة البيئية
swell up	To become bigger or rounder	يتورم
trek	To make a long or difficult journey on foot	يقوم برحلة مشي
active	Always busy doing things	نشط
wildlife	Animals and plants that grow indecently of people in natural condition	الحياة البرية
endangered	It describes something that in danger of disappearing forever	معرض للخطر
materials	means the things that are used for making or doing something.	المواد الخام
impact	The effect that an action or a person has on someone or something	تأثير
sustainable	An activity that can be repeated because it doesn't harm the environment.	مستدام
crowded	having many people	مزدحم
exotic	from or in another country	غريب - اجنبي
isolated	Far away from any others	معزول
scar	A mark on skin from a cut or wound.	ندبة - جرح
cliff	A steep piece of land or rock	منحدر صخري
conservation	The protection of natural things such as animals, plants, forests, etc. to prevent them from being spoiled or destroyed	المحافظة على البيئة

Expressions

Teach how to provide holidays to	يتعلم كيف يوفر اجازات ل	on the balacny busy with	في البلكونه مشغول مع
take photos	يأخذ صور	stuck at home	محبوس البيت
famous for	مشهور ب	introduce new ideas	يقدم افكار جديدة
go trekking into (across -through)	يذهب ليمشي عبر	environmentally-friendly	بيئه صحيه
along the coast	بطول الساحل	go diving	يذهب للغوص
loads of things	كثير من الاشياء	on board	علي ظهر السفينه او الطائره
stop coming	يتوقف عن	cure for	علاج ل
do/cause damage	يسبب تلف	on holiday	في اجازة
Make sure	يتأكد	look pale	يبدو شاحب
blow off	تطير	on the first	في اليوم.....
limited impact	تأثير محدود	arrange to	يرتب ان
swell up(swelled- swollen)	يتورم	get away	ينصرف
natural materials	مواد طبيعيه	go on a cruise	في رحله علي مركب
natural world	العالم الطبيعي	ride on a boat	يركب علي المركب
stay in	يبقي في مكان	for lunch	للغداء
at least	علي الاقل	over the moon	سعيد جدا
benefit from	يستفيد من	except for	باستثناء
close to	بجانب	add to	يضيف ل

Derivatives

V		N		Adjective	
respect	يحتترم	respect	احترام	Respect(ed) (able)	محترم
exist	يوجد	existence	وجود	existent	موجود
develop	ينمي - يطور	development	تنمية - تطوير	Develop (ed) (ing)	متطور - نامي
damage	يتلف	damage	تلف	damaged	تالف
protect	يحمي	protection	حماية	protected	محمي
amaze	يدهش	amazement	دهشه	Amaze (d)(ing)	ندهش - مدهش

Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Synonyms	Antonyms
endanger	threaten	protect – assist - defend
isolate	Separate – cut off	gather – associate- join
lean	bend	raise - erect
trek	Hike - journey	stay
swell	Rise - increase	contract - decline
busy	Full - active	Free - lazy
limited	Restricted -reduced	limitless
unique	Matchless- rare	Usual normal
fascinating	attractive, charming	Boring - dull
sustainable	Continuous- maintainable	temporary
conserve	preserve, maintain, sustain, keep	Hurt - misuse
get away	Escape , leave, depart	Remain - stay

Language Notes

1 **destination** (مكان / وجهة سفر)مكانة موضع / مكانه (صح) **position****location** موقع محدد - مكان تصوير**site** موقع اثرى / بناء - الكتروني

Our luggage was checked all the way through to our final destination.

What is the exact location of the ship.

2 - **sight** حاسة الإبصار -

He lost his sight when he got old.

-sights معالم سياحية -

Egypt is full of fantastic sights.

3-**weather**الطقس :- حالة الجو من مطر و رياح و ثلوج في فترة معينة
المناخ : فتره طويله من الوقت**climate**

-What will the weather be like tomorrow ?

-The climate of Egypt is fine all the year round

4 **stay in/at** (يقيم في مكان) - **stay with** (يقيم مع شخص) - **stay for** (يقيم لمدة)

-It was cold and wet outside so we stayed at home

- We're going to stay with my grandparents on their farm.

5- **endangered** مهدد/ معرض للانقراض - **- endanger** يعرض للخطر - **- danger** خطر

The lizards are classed as an endangered species.

Smoking endangers your health.

The danger of a fire in the home increases during the holidays.

6 - **go + V. ing****- go for + a (noun)**

-I like to go shopping with my friend.

- Let's go for a walk.

7 - **stop + (V. ing)****- Stop + to + المصدر (توقف لكي يفعل شئ يتوقف عن)**-You **must stop talking** in the class.- Ali **stopped smoking** . He no longer smokes.-On his way home , I **stopped to buy** a paper.8- **drive** شخص **to + place** (يوصل شخصا بالسيارة)**- drive a car** يقود سيارة

- My father drives me to school every day. I can drive a car

9 - **see / hear / watch + object + (v.ing) Or (inf. مصدر. بعد)** هذه الافعال ياتي بعد

-I saw him talking about the Pyramids on TV.

عندما ندرك جزء من الحدث

- I saw him talk about the Pyramids on TV.

عندما ندرك الحدث كله

10 - **excited** مثار / **interested** مهتم **bored** شاعر بالممل

(غالبا عاقل)

- exciting مثير / **interesting** شيق / **boring** (ممل)

(ممل) غالبا غير عاقل

-I'm so excited to visit Egypt.. - I'm bored with my job.

لاحظ ان الصفات التي تنتهي ب **ed** ((غالبا الاشخاص)) تعود على من يقع عليه الحدث

E.g. The match was exciting.

- Shikabala is **an amazing player**.

اما الصفات التي تنتهي ب **ing** (تعود على من / ما يسبب الحدث او الشعور سواء (شيء او شخص)

11 - encourage + to + شخص او مصدر + يشجع على

- My parents encouraged me to study medicine.

12 - famous.... for مشهور بـ * famous in مشهور في * famousas مشهور كـ

- He is famous for his honesty.

-He became famous in Egypt.

13 - remind someone to + inf. يذكر بشيء أو شخص

- remind+ object + of ذكر شخص أن يفعل شيء

-Please remind me to post this letter.

-This souvenir reminds me of the last trip.

- remember

يتذكر تلقاء نفسه

-I can't remember her phone number.

-Remember to take your P.E. clothes to school

14 - have interest in = be interested in شيق للأشياء interesting مصدر interested to + مهتم بـ

They have a great interest in learning English.

-They are interested to learn English.

They are interested in learning English.

-The story is very interesting

15. lose يفقد/يخسر be lost = get lost = go missing = lose way يضل الطريق

* I've lost my Exercise book.

Please, help me to find it.

* Three tourists have been lost in the jungle.

16. some / any / no / every + else:) آخر

* You can't find this product anywhere else.

* Do you want anything else?

18 - such as = like +

اسم عند ذكر امثلة لشيء ما

* Team sports like (such as) football and basketball are based on teamwork

19. affect يؤثر على

- have a/ an effect (impact) on تأثير على

* affect : يؤثر على

Pollution affects the environment badly.

* effect / impact : تأثير We are studying the effects of pollution on the environment.

* Pollution has a bad effect (impact) on people and the environment.

20 - provide with يزود بـ

- provide for يقدم لـ

The government provides schools with modern sets.

-The government provides modern sets for schools.

21- isolated / منعزل

-insulated

معزول /

Patients who have infectious diseases should be isolated.

Electric wires are usually insulated.

22- protect from يحمي من /

Coral reefs should be protected from damage.

23- trek يذهب في رحلة صعبة - trick يخدع - track يتعقب - truck شاحنة - trunk جذع شجرة

24- Doctors work on يطور a cure for cancer

- She works with Amira in the pharmacy.

25 - alone (on my own – by myself) بمفردي

- I built the house alone / on my own

26 - everyday يومي /

Al-Ahram is an everyday newspaper - I go to work every day كل يوم

27 -The number of students in secondary schools is decreasing.

فعل مفرد

- The number of students in secondary schools are decreasing فعل جمع

28 - miss (someone / train / bus / school / lecture / the goal)

- I have missed the train .

-lose (money / interest / something / his life / someone (by death)

- I 've lost my mobile

29- make (صفة /مصدر+ مفعول)

Let + مصدر بدون to مفعول

- cause + to مصدر بـ

He made his son happy -

She made me respect her.

She let me respect her.

They caused him to leave the company.

30 - include - يشمل – يتضمن

contain - يحتوي على

consist of

يتكون من

31 -rob

يسرق مكان

- steal

يسرق شيء

- A thief stole my watch.

- Some men robbed the bank.

32 - **Decide + to + المصدر (يقرر)**

They decided to move into a new flat

Decide + on + اسم (يختار)

You should decide on your goal in life.

Decide + that + فاعل + فعل + (يقرر)

They decided that they should study hard.

33- **help + مفعول to + inf / inf.**

- **help + شيء + مفعول with +**

She helped women (to) succeed.

He helped me with homework.

34. **limit = cut down** يحدد/يقلل

mark يحدد/يميز

* We should limit our use of non-renewable sources of energy.

* Sham El Nasseem marks the beginning of spring.

LISTENING TEXT

Luca : Last summer I **decided not to go on holiday** to Greece with my friends, but to do something different.

Klara : So where did you go?

Luca : Well, as I'm studying **Biology** I thought **I'd go to** Indonesia **to find out** more about the **orangutans** there. So, I booked a holiday with an ecotourism company and went to Borneo.

Klara : What was it like?

Luca : **A bit of a disaster** although **I did love** the rainforests. When we got to Jakarta we **caught an internal flight** to Borneo, but my **luggage** never arrived so, I had to buy new clothes. The next morning, we **took a boat up** the river to the orangutan centre and **while I was leaning out of the boat to take photos, I dropped my camera.**

Klara : Oh, no. Did you **manage to get** it back?

Luca : No way, the river's really deep, so I just had to leave it, but I was very **annoyed**, but **at least** I had my phone. It took two days **to get** to the centre so **while we were sitting on the boat, the guide told us all about the orangutans** and what the **conservationists** are doing there. It sounded really exciting. When we arrived, the guide introduced us to **the people working** there and then we had dinner.

Klara : What **was** the food **like**?

Luca : It was mainly rice and vegetables, but they were very **spicy**. I don't like **spicy food**, so I only ate the rice. By the end of the week, I was eating the vegetables and fish as I was so hungry.

Klara : Well. I'm **glad to hear** you're not **such a fussy eater** anymore. What did you do every day?

Luca : We got up about six every morning as that's when **the sun rises**, had breakfast and then **trekked into the forest** to learn about the orangutans from the people who are **looking after** them.

Klara : Did you feed them?

Luca : No, they're **wild animals**, not **pets**. We just **observed** them, **made notes** and took photos. We also learnt about other animals, birds and **insects** in the rainforests. Unfortunately, at the end of the first week, a spider **bit** me **while I was sleeping and my arm swelled up.**

Klara : So what happened?

Luca : I had to go to hospital- but as the nearest hospital was 200 km away, I **had to go** by helicopter. I stayed there for a week all alone and then went back to the centre, but **as soon as I got back I was ill**. **One of the tourists** **was** making the dinner that night and he wasn't **a good cook**. He didn't clean the fish **properly** and **everybody was** sick. I'm staying at home this summer.

READING TEXT

1-What is ecotourism ?

1- Ecotourism is about providing holidays to places which are often **endangered** and **isolated**. The holidays **are designed** to have a limited **impact on** the local **environment** and to educate tourists about **conservation**.

2- Egypt is developing ecotourism to protect the environments **along the Red Sea** coast. Tourists can stay in hotels built of environmentally friendly natural materials. When tourists **go diving**, they **are taught** how to **avoid damaging** the fish and corals.

3- Madagascar is **famous for** its ecotourism and wants to protect its ecosystem (**the animals and plants in its environment**). 80% of the animals, and 90% of the plants that live there **don't exist** anywhere else in the world. **Lemurs**, for example, only live in **Madagascar**

4- The Galapagos Islands in Ecuador are famous for the **unique** animals, **such as** the giant turtles which live there. **Ecuador** makes sure that tourism is **sustainable**. Only a limited number of people can visit islands each year, so the animals and their environment are safe.

5- The Komodo National Park in Indonesia is a popular ecotourism destination. Much of Indonesia's endangered wildlife, **including** the Komodo dragon, can only be found here. **The National Park** is also famous for its beach with pink sand.

@@

(James) : This is me on our hotel balcony in **Sharm El-Sheikh**. It's **brilliant** here and there are **loads of** things to do. I'm **over the moon** **visiting** Egypt. The weather's really hot so we spend most of the time in the water. My sister and I are **learning to dive** with some other teenagers **at the resort**. I **love diving**; it's so **relaxing** and you can see all these **amazing fish** in the sea. I want to get an **underwater** camera so I can take photos of them. Last week we were in Luxor and visited the ancient temples there. I'm not usually **interested in** history, but I actually found them fascinating and am really glad we went.

(Katy) : Day 10 of my summer holidays! I'm **so bored** – all my friends are away or **busy with** their family and **I'm stuck** here at home. The weather's **awful** and there's nothing to do. Last week I went to **stay with** my grandparents for a few days which was nice, but they live in **a tiny village** with no shops. I was **helping** Granddad **in** his garden most of the time. He grows all his own vegetables – he says it's **cheaper than buying** them. Maybe I'll **try and grow** some **lettuce** in our garden when it **stops raining**. I was watching a programme **on TV** this morning about gardening – maybe I'll have a new hobby!

%%%

A popular problem!

Venice is **famous for being** a city with many canals, colourful **carnivals**, **amazing plazas** and **historic buildings**. However, the city is **a victim of its own beauty**. Venice has a **population** of only 55,000 but the city **is visited** by twenty million tourists every year. This tourism **creates** a lot of jobs for **the local population**, but also causes many problems .

Many of the 59,000 tourists a day **enjoy riding** on boats **along the canals**, but **the large cruise ships can damage the historic buildings**. The narrow streets can be very **crowded** and it is difficult for local people to move around the city. **The local council** are trying to **find a solution** which keeps both the tourists and **local residents** happy. They are also trying to **encourage tourists to visit** other beautiful sites around Venice.

Video Script

Do tourists usually stop and think about the impact they have on the place they're visiting. The tourist offices in cities which are popular with tourists think about how tourism affects their cities. They **consider the advantages and disadvantages**. They try to help local people cope with lots of visitors in the streets of their city.

A good example is Amsterdam in the Netherlands. Twenty years ago, the city's tourism office was spending a lot of money **advertising** the city, but they don't do this anymore. The city has about 18 million visitors a year and that is more than enough for a community of 1.5 million local people. In future, people should think more about the environment and local people when they are travelling. For example, they should use public transport if they can, and try not to travel when the roads and trains are very busy with local people travelling to work. There is plenty of space for everyone if we are considered of each other!

Exercises on unit : 1 (Voc.)**1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1-.....is about providing holidays to places which are often endangered.
a - Ecotourism b - Ecology c - Economy d - Economics
- 2- There are a few pandas left in the world today .Pandas are
a - danger b - existence c - endangered d - dangerous
- 3- He lived in an.....house. There were no houses beside his.
a - insulated b - isolated c - insane d - insulation
- 4- Pollution has a bad.....on the environment.
a - affect b - affection c - effects d - impact
- 5- Don't worry about the books .The school.....them for free.
a - provide b - prevent c - prohibit d - pollute
- 6- The government should care for those with.....income .
a - high b - limited c - affluent d - wealthy
- 7- Ecotourism helps tourists to be educated about
a - reservation b - preference c - conservation d - conversation
- 8- Madagascar is famous for its ecotourism and wants to.....its ecosystem.
a - protect b - damage c - destroy d - get rid of
- 9- The.....means the animals and the plants in an environment
a - system b - systematic c - ecosystem d - systemize
- 10- Madagascar has 80%of the animals and 90% of the plants that don't.....anywhere
a - exact b - exist c - exceed d - extract
- 11- only live in Madagascar
a - Cows b - Monkeys c - Buffaloes d - Lemurs
- 12- Egypt is providing ecotourism to protect the environmentsthe Red Sea
a - along b - a long c - long d - belong
- 13- Tourists can stay in hotels of environmental friendly natural materials.
a - are built b - building c - built d - which built
- I want to go to Hurghada because I want todiving in the Red Sea.
a - play b - go c - do d - make
- 15- He wanted his daughtera happy life.
a - having b - have c - to have d - had
- 16- Tourists who go diving should avoid damaging the fish and the
a - corals b - collars c - callers d - cooler
- 17- The Galapagos islands in Ecuador are famous for theanimals.
a - quality b - equality c - unique d - lucky
- 18- Ecuador is famous for the unique animals suchthe giant turtles living there.
a - like b - so c - alike d - as
- 19- The word "sustainable" is equal in meaning to the word
a - continuous b - finished c - vanished d - disappeared

- 20- Safe is the opposite of
a - security b - hazardous c - secure d - safety
- 21- A limited number of tourists the islands every year.
a - visit b - visits c - has visited d - have visited
- 22- He didn't use his real name, he used a
a - pen-name b - surname c - family name d - nickname
- 23- The Komodo National park in Indonesia is a popular ecotourism
a - destiny b - disaster c - destination d - destruction
- 24- The Komodo.....is only found in the National Park in Indonesia.
a - elephant b - dragon c - turtle d - lion
- 25- In the past our houses were made from mud bricks and primitive
a - materials b - matters c - mutiny d - matron
26. Much of Indonesia's....., including the Komodo dragon can only be found there.
a - happy life b - good life c - wildlife d - tame
- 27- We always take.....to answer the questions.
a - after b - turns c - place d - to
- 28- The National Park is also famous for its beach with its pink
a - dress b - scarf c - jeans d - sand
- 29- There are many.....animals in the world which we should save.
a - endangered b - dangerous c - danger d - dangerously
- 30- Some animals live in.....parts and people never see them.
a - insulated b - isolated c - near d - nearby
- 31-The tourist industry has had a big.....on the local town.
a - packet b - infect c - packed d - impact
- 32- The natural world around us is the
a - environment b - wildlife c - material d - destination
- 33- The opposite of "wild" is
a - team b - worse c - domestic d - evil
- 34- It is important to use only local.....when you build an eco-hotel.
a - title b - mattress c - material d - molar
- 35- The Komodo dragon is.....to Indonesia . It doesn't live anywhere else.
a - sustainable b - unique c - equal d - antique
- 36.....is for people who want a holiday which respects the environment.
a - Industry b - Agriculture c - Culture d - Ecotourism
- 37- We need to make sure that tourism here isotherwise people will stop coming
a - sustainable b - suspend c - summon d - secret
- 38- Why do you think thedisappearing from the natural world.
a - water b - orange c - orangutan d - organs
- 39- The.....give food to the orangutan.
a - conversations b - conservation c - national d - conservationists
- 40- Her arm was beginning toup where the bee had stung her.
a - swell b - swing c - sew d - suit
- 41- I hate having to.....up that hill with all the groceries.
a - truck b - trek c - trick d - trunk
- 42- Don't.....out of the window or you will fall.
a - lean b - lane c - lend d - lure
- 43- I prefer having my chicken
a - spices b - species c - spicy d - speck
- 44- The.....is an animal like a large monkey with no tail with long arms.
a - orangutan b - buffalo c - cheetah d - monkey
- 45- The nearest hospital is.....to the orangutan centre.
a - open b - close c - shut d - opener
- 46- The fire in the Amazon.....will contribute to the increase of global warming.
a - rain b - gardens c - fields d - rainforests
- 47- To beis to be both a volunteer and a tourist.
a - volunteer b - tour c - tour guide d - voluntourist
- 48- It is brilliant here and there are.....of things to do.
a - loads b - leads c - much d - little
- 49- I am so.....to go to Sharm El-Sheikh with my family.
a - exciting b - fascinating c - excited d - boring
- 50- Which summeryou'd like to spend your holiday in?
a - sort b - resort c - climate d - weather

- 51- I love diving ; It is so.....and you can see all these amazing fish.
a - relaxing b - relaxed c - galaxy d - relax
- 52- I want to get an underwater camera so I can.....photos of these fish.
a - look b - eat c - take d - book
- 53- How did you find the ancient temples. I found them
a - relaxing b - excited c - glad d - fascinating
- 54- I am so bored , All my friends are away and I am.....here at home.
a - stick b - stuck c - lock d - strike
- 55- I'll try and grow some..... in our garden when it stops raining.
a - Pasta b - cream c - lettuce d - noodles
- 56- The countryside is quiet and
a - awful b - peaceful c - dreadful d - terrifying
- 57- At 5.00 pm, we sailed along the river to see the sun going
a - up b - over c - under d - down
- 58- I can't stand living near to a railway station as it is too
a - quiet b - noisy c - relaxing d - peaceful
- 59- She travels to all kinds of.....exotic locations all over the world.
a - exotic b - oxide c - excited d - fascinated
- 60- It is important to keep.....in an emergency.
a - noisy b - nervous c - calm d - boring
- 61-The Galapagos Islands in Ecuador are famous.....the unique animals.
a. about b. to c. in d. for
- 62-Researchers are.....technology for the US military
a. making b. encouraging c. developing d. increasing
- 63- The Komodo National Park in Indonesia is a popular ecotourism.....
a- site b- location c- destination d- station
- 64-You'll need a variety of skills,.....leadership and negotiating
a- including b- containing c- consisting d- enclosing
- 65-Have you been..... as interesting as Alexandria?
a- somewhere b- everywhere c- anywhere d- nowhere
- 66-Many thousands have from the new treatment.
a) afforded b) admired c) suffered d) benefited
67. We.....diving on the coral reef.
a) did b) played c)went d) made
68. On school trips, the older children care.....the younger ones.
a) of b) with c) on d) for
- 69- We need to people so that they understand the importance of a good, healthy diet.
a- educate b- know c- learn d-admire
- 70- We must try to find a.....solution to the conflict.
a. peace b. peaceful c. peacefully d. pace
- 71-We're hoping to away to Scotland for a few days
a-arrive b-take c. run d. get
- 72-We sailed along the river to see the sundown
a-went b-going c-to go d-goes
- 73-The afternoon is then yours to explore this.....city.
a-fascinating b-fascinated c-fascinate d-fascination
- 74-It is important to encourage environmental.....and awareness
a- conversion b-conversation c-conservation d-condensation
- 75- Physical exercise can.....you against heart disease.
a-provide b-prevent c-produce d-protect
- 76- My uncle decided to take us to a restaurant.....lunch
a-to b-for c-on d-in
- 77-For five days he across the mountains of central China
a-ticked b-tricked c-trekked d-tracked
- 78-Siwa in a/an.....part of the country, about 750 kilometres west of Cairo.
a-abroad b-aboard c-nearby d-remote
- 79-There has been a.....in the population of the city. It was smaller ten years ago.
a less b decrease c grow d increase
- 80-A.....is someone who does a job willingly without being paid
a-conservationist b-tourist c-volunteer d-donor
- 81-In bad weather, the wind often.....my hat onto the ground.
a-Feels b-falls c-blows d-drives

- 82-I added ginger and cumin to give the rice a.....flavour
a-spice b-specify c-spiky d-spicy
- 83.....,a limited number of people can visit islands each year.
a. Lonely b. Only c. Alone d. Lone
84. Much of Indonesia's endangered.....can only be found here.
a. long life b. wildlife c. lifetime d. deadline
85. It's.....to learn about new places.
a. interesting b. interest c. interested d. interests
- 86-I have a lot of homework to do and I'm.....here at home doing it.
a. shock b. suck c. struck d. stuck
- 87-He was.....on the bridge, watching the boats go by.
a. training b. leaning c. loaning d. hiring
88. People should use.....friendly building materials.
a. environmental b. environment c. environmentally d. environments
89. When tourists go diving, they are.....how to avoid damaging the fish and corals.
a. learned b. studied c. taught d. brought
90. Pollution has a bad impact.....people and the environment.
a. on b. at c. in d. with
- 91-Divers enjoy the.....colors of the coral fishes.
a. exotic b. toxic c. shocking d. violent
- 92 . My grandparents live in a very.....village, so we rarely visit them.
a - insulated b - near c - isolated d - natural
- 93- His arm.....up because a mosquito bit him.
a - swallowed b - swelled c - stayed d - sweated
- 94 - Teachers must explain lessons... to their students.
a - probably b - possibly c - properly d - proper
- 95 - Earthquakes and volcanoes are natural.....which are unpredictable.
a - disasters b - incidents c - distracters d - disciplines
- 96- Passengers' is searched at the border before being allowed to enter another country.
a - luggage b - cookies c - leakage d - luger
- 97.....is the business of arranging holidays to natural places that are isolated or endangered.
a - Destination b - Destiny c - Density d - Ecotourism
98. My son was hit by his classmate while playing football, so his ankle..... up.
a - existed b - swelled c - suspended d - surrounded
- 99 - We arrived at the station late, but.....the train was delayed.
a - unluckily b - unfortunately c - lucky d - fortunately
- 100.....is animals and plants growing in natural conditions.
A - Wildlife b - Coral reef c - Conservation d - Preservation
- 101 - The synonym of the word "giant" is.....
a - unique b - sustainable c - massive d - endangered
- 102 - Someone whose age is between 13 and 19 is called a.....
a - volunteer b - tourist c - teenager d - ecologist
- 103 - Luxor is famous for its ancient which tourist like to visit.
a - trumpets b - samples c - temples d - tempers
- 104- She is over eighty, but she is still... She does all her housework by herself.
a - active b - crowded c - relaxing d - dead
- 105- Messi, Ronaldo and Mo Salah are.....footballers. They score awesome goals.
a - upset b - brilliant c - foolish d - boring
- 106- All the assistants are very busy now because the mall iswith customers.
a - crowded b - relaxing c - exotic d - exciting
- 107 - I can't go on watching this film. It is extremely.....
a - bored b - boring c - fascinating d - peaceful
- 108 - Hurghada is a really.....city. we all like going there.
a - amazing b - amazed c - amaze d - amazingly
- 109 -is a round vegetable with thin green leaves eaten raw in salad.
a - Lettuce b - Coconut c - Walnut d - Hazelnut
- 110 - The antonym of the word " beautiful " is.....
a - pretty b - smart c - ugly d - handsome
- 111 - The weather was.....yesterday. I couldn't sleep at all.
a - pleasant b - awful c - relaxing d - expensive

1- Choose the Two (2) correct answers out of the Five (5) options given:

- This bird is exotic. It is unusual and rarely seen here." The antonym of the word 'exotic' is
a. familiar b. strange c. rare d. foreign e. conventional
- Be careful! The forest is full of giant snakes." The synonym of the word 'giant' is
a. tiny b. huge c. small d. gigantic e. minute
- "Our car broke down and we had a long trek." The word 'trek' here is a synonym of
a. fishing b. hike c. losing d. fabricating e. journey
- Ancient is toas boring is to exciting.
a. excited b. new c. modern d. new e. tiny
- "He lives in an isolated area." The word 'isolated' can be replaced by
a. close b. nearby c. remote d. neighbouring e. faraway
- "Exotic birds are seen here in winter." In this sentence, the word 'exotic' is a synonym of
a. native b. unusual c. unconventional d. foreign e. original
- My father is the guardian of my uncle's sons after his death. The synonyms of "guardian" are...
a. trustee b. attacker c. keeper d. rescuer e. sender
- He covered his head with a paper to protect it from rain. The word "protect" means.....
a. smash b. guard c. secure d. destroy e. reserve
- My brother's leg has swollen up. The antonyms of swollen up are.....
a. increase b. contract c. enlarge d. decrease e. rise
- There toys are safe for my children. The word "safe" means.....
a. dangerous b. risky c. secure d. harmful e. preserve

Grammar**THE PAST SIMPLE TENSE****الماضي البسيط**

١- يعبر الماضي البسيط عن حدث انتهى في الماضي في وقت محدد

- She **visited** London in 2010.
- I **was** in Alexandria a month ago.
- At the age of seven, my parents **took** me to Jordan.

٢- يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدثين متتابعين في الماضي .

- When he **had** an idea, he **wrote** a short story.
- I **went** to the park and **met** my friends.

٣- يعبر عن عادة في الماضي و غير مستمرة الآن.

- I **played** tennis every day **when I was** younger.
- I **always ate** breakfast before I **went** to school.
- She **cooked** lunch **every day last week**.

4- يعبر عن الحقائق الماضية وعن الأفعال المنتهية (الموتى) وعن الحدث الثاني :

- Shakspeare **wrote** Hamlet
- Colombus **discovered** America.

- ملحوظة هامة : نستخدم الماضي البسيط وليس الماضي المستمر إذا كان الفعل يعبر عن حالة. (be)

- I **saw** Ali **while** he **was** at the sports club. (NOT: was-being)

5- يعبر عن سرد الأحداث في الماضي مع : first, then, next , at last, finally,

- Ali **found** a bag ,then he **went** to the police station.

6- يستخدم لوصف حدث استمر لفترة في الماضي ولكنه غير موجود الآن

- She **lived in Tokyo for seven years**.

- They **were** in London from Monday to Thursday of last week.

7- في الحالة الثانية من (If) الشرطية.

- **If** he **helped** us, we **would win**.

8- يستخدم مع التعبيرات الآتية ليعبر عن أحداث مستبعدة أو مستحيلة الحدوث في المضارع أو المستقبل.

1- I wish + فاعل + ماضي بسيط

- I wish mum **wasn't ill**.

- I wish the Egyptian team **played well**.

2- It's time + فاعل + ماضي بسيط

- It's time he **paid the bill**.

- It is time father **arrived**.

2- I 'd rather + فاعل + ماضي بسيط

- I would rather she **helped him**.

- I'd rather Ali **didn't come**.

يستخدم الماضي البسيط مع الكلمات الآتية:

yesterday - ago - last.... - in the past - once / once upon a time ذات مرة - one day - in 2007 - from

+ سنة + to + سنة - When I was.....

- How long ago = When - for

- I last ate fish when I was in Alex.

used to + inf. اعتاد أن

يستخدم للتعبير عن التناقض بين العادات أو المواقف في الماضي والحاضر:

- I **used to eat** breakfast before I **went** to school.
- He **used to swim** every day. Now he **doesn't** (swim).
- He **used to be** late all the time. Now, he **isn't** (late).

didn't use to + مصدر

وفي حالة النفي نستخدم:

- I **didn't use to** play computer games, but now I do.

did + فاعل + use to + مصدر

وفي حالة السؤال نستخدم:

- Did you use to walk to school? - Where did you use to live?

يستخدم **no longer** بدلا من **used to** ويأتي بعدها الفعل في المضارع البسيط:

- He **used to smoke**. = He **no longer smokes**.

يستخدم **any more / any longer** بدلا من **used to** مع نفي الفعل في المضارع البسيط وتأتي في نهاية الجملة:

- He **used to smoke**. = He **doesn't smoke any more**.

used to = It was my habit to / I was in / got the habit of

كما يمكن التعبير عن عادة في الماضي باستخدام (was / were used to v.ing).

- I **was used to eating** breakfast before I **went** to school.

THE PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE الماضي المستمر

Form

was / were + V. ing.....

- Ali (he) **was reading** a story. - Aya and Heba (They) **were cooking** lunch.
- ١ - يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا لفترة أو في وقت محدد في الماضي
- **Between six and half past six this morning**, I **was having** breakfast.
- Tarek **was eating** dinner **at noon yesterday**.
- I **was travelling** to Cairo **at eight o'clock (yesterday) this morning**.

يستخدم الماضي المستمر مع الكلمات الآتية:

- **all day yesterday = the whole day yesterday** - **just as** - **While** بينما - **as** بينما - **when** في اللحظة التي - **at** عندما
- **all the time** طوال اليوم - **yesterday morning / at noon** طوال الوقت

- ٢ -- يستخدم الماضي المستمر مع كلمات مثل (While / when / As / Just as) للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في الماضي قطعه حدث آخر في الماضي البسيط

(الحدثان تقاطعا) ماضي بسيط , ماضي مستمر (فاعل) 1-While / As / When / Just as

While I **was sleeping**, a thief **entered** the house.

= As I **was sleeping**, a thief **entered** the house.

- يستخدم الماضي المستمر مع While / when / As / Just as للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس الوقت في الماضي

(الحدثان لم يتقاطعا) ... ماضي مستمر , ... ماضي مستمر 2-(While / As / When / Just as)

-(While / As / Just as) my mother **was making** the dinner, I **was looking after** my sister.

- While I **was studying**, my father **was reading**.

- While she **was walking** in the street, she **met** one of her old friends.

- إذا لم يأتي بعد **while** فاعل يأتي بعدها (v.ing)

- **While playing**, I fell down.

Choose

- While (playing – he was playing) football, he scored a goal.
- While (playing – he was playing) football, Ali was studying English.

- يمكن استخدام **during** بدلا من **while** و يأتي بعدها **noun**

- **While** he **was playing** the game, he got hurt.
- **During the game**, he got hurt. = - He got hurt during the game.
- **During the party**, I met an old friend.
- **During my lunchtime**, the phone rang.

~~~~~

**When** (فاعل) ماضى مستمر , ماضى بسيط

**When** (فاعل) ماضى بسيط , ماضى مستمر

يمكن أن يأتي بعد **when** ماضى بسيط ثم ماضى مستمر أو العكس حسب المعنى :

- I was studying English when the lights went out.
- The lights went out when I was studying English.
- When I was having a shower , the phone rang

يمكن أن يكون الحدثين مع **when** فى الماضى البسيط :

- يمكن أن يكون الحدثين مع **when** فى الماضى البسيط إذا كانا متتابعين و لم يقطع احدهما الآخر

**When** he **arrived** , he **found** the door locked.

- يمكن استخدام **On** بدلا من **when** و يأتي بعدها **V.ing** أو اسم

- **On arriving / his arrival**, he **found** the door locked.

- الفعل بعد **and** يأخذ نفس شكل الفعل الذي يسبقها:

• He **was writing** a letter **and listening** to some music.

□ لاحظ عدم استخدام **to Be** فى الماضى المستمر:

• **While / When** I **was** at school, I **worked** to a plan.

~~~~~

يمكن أن يأتي بعد **because** ماضى مستمر و الفعل الآخر ماضى بسيط :

- Magdy **couldn't hear** the phone **because** he **was having** a shower.

~~~~~

عادة لا نستخدم الماضى المستمر مع الأفعال التى تصف حالة، شعور، حاسة، رأى، فهم، ادراك ، ملكية ولكن نستخدم معها ماضى بسيط لأنها تعبر عن حالة ثابتة ودائمة :

- لاحظ عدم استخدام الأفعال الدالة على الحالة فى الماضى المستمر.

- She (**seemed – was-seeming**) ill when I **visited** her.
- While I **was** at home, someone **knocked** on the door. (NOT: **was-being**)

لاحظ : لا يستخدم **V.To.Be** فى الاستمرار ولكن نكتفى بـ **was / were** فقط .  
أفعال الحواس قد تأتى فى الاستمرار اذا جاءت بمعنى مؤقت و متغير مثل:

- Where are you? - **I'm tasting** the food. – Why **are you smelling** the food?

~~~~~

- هي مجموعة من الكلمات تبدأ بـ (V.ing) و تستخدم بدلا من جملة كاملة مبنية للمعلوم.

- **As Sara was walking** to town yesterday, she saw two of her friends.
- **Walking to town** yesterday, Sara saw two of her school friends.
- **As Rami was running down** the road, he fell over and hurt his back.
- **Running down the road** , Rami fell over and hurt his back

~~~~~

## Mr El Sebaei Grammar Exercises تمارين الوحدة الأولى

- 1- I (have seen – saw – would see – was seen) him a few days ago.
- 2- I ( had gone-have gone-went-go) to the museum in 2015.
- 3- My mother made me a cake. It ( was tasting -tasted - would taste - had tasted) of lemons.

- 4- What games did you ( using - used-are used- use ) to play with your friends?
- 5- Nada ( leaned- was cleaning- has cleaned-was cleaned ) the house two hours ago.
- 6- The house ( ( leaned- was cleaning- has cleaned-was cleaned ) ) two hours ago.
- 7- (Are - Is - Did - Does) you use to play with dolls?
- 8- At the age of seven, my parents (are taking- took- take- was taken) me to Jordan.
- 9- At the age of seven, I (are taking- took- take-was taken) me to Jordan.
- 10- He ( gave-was given- has given- had given ) a prize for a drawing of an animal.
- 11- I ( bought - was bought -didn't buy- wasn't bought ) the vegetables. My mother did them.
- 12- The vegetables ( bought - was bought -didn't buy- wasn't bought ) by me. Mum did that.
- 13- ( You washed- Did you wash-You were washed- Were you washed) the vegetables to cook lunch ?
- 14- A : What ( you did- did you do- you were done- were done) to paint the house ? B : I bought some wonderful paints.
15. Fortunately yesterday's news ( isn't - weren't - wasn't - didn't ) as bad as we expected.
- 16- My father always ( walk- walked-walks- was walking ) to school when he was young.
- a) walk                      b) walks                      c) walked                      d) walking
- 17- Not many girls ( go- went- have gone- had gone ) to school in Egypt in the early 20th century.
- 18- I ( have worked- had worked- worked- was working ) for five hours every day last week.
- 19- When I was on holiday, I always ( sit- sat-was sitting- have sat ) on the beach to see the sea.
- 20- My uncle lived in Aswan three years ( for- since- ago-yet ) .
- 21- He ( had written- wrote- writes- was writing ) the letter and sent it.
- 22- When I was young, I ( sleep- have slept- used to sleep-was slept ) long hours.
- 23- I once used to ..... the newspaper every day. Now I don't have the time.
- a) reading                      b) read                      c) was reading                      d) had read
- 24- My last e-mail (send - was sending -has sent -was sent) to six of my friends
- 25- She (writes - has written - wrote - will write) poetry for 7 years, but now she writes novels.
- 26- When she (is - was - was being - has been) seven, she wrote a poem which won a prize.
- 27- This film (directed - had directed - was directed - was directing) by Thomas Wilson.
- 28- He ( didn't use to -isn't used to -used to -uses to) need much sleep, but he does now
- 29-Our block of flats (was built - build - has been built - was building) five years ago.
- 30-I (was starting - have started - am starting - started) this school in 2016.
- 31-When I was younger, I used (to play - play - playing - played) tennis with my friend
- 32-He used to be a driver but nowadays he ( doesn't - wasn't - isn't - didn't ).
- 33- At six o'clock yesterday evening, I (was watching - am watching - have been watching - watch) TV.
- 34- What ..... when I called you? You sounded very busy.
- a) did you do                      b) do you do                      c) had you done                      d) were you doing
- 35- While she ..... her homework, my sister was listening to music.
- a) did                      b) was doing                      c) is doing                      d) would do
- 36- Yesterday evening, we .....for our English test when all the lights went out.
- a) had revised                      b) were revising                      c) revised                      d) revising
- 37- What ..... at eight o'clock yesterday evening?
- a) were you doing                      b) did you do                      c) you were doing                      d) do you do
- 38-Someone phoned me while I ( cook-was cooked-was cooking-am cooking ) the dinner .
- 39-While my car....., I went shopping. (was mending -was being mended -had mended)
- 40-While my mother was doing the washing up, my baby sister ..... after.
- a) was looking                      b) has been looked                      c) was being looked                      d) had looked
- 41- While ( played -playing -was playing -had played ) football , he fell down.
- 42-While finishing one story, he ( thinks-was thinking- thought) of another one
- a) thinks                      b) is thinking                      c) was thinking                      d) has thought
- 43- The washing machine (delivered - delivers - was delivered - had delivered) while I (was reading - read -had read- is reading ) the newspaper.
- 44- While I (have come - were coming - was coming - had come) to school today, I saw an old friend.
- 45-Nesma first (met - was meeting-had met-meets) her friend when she was at primary school.
- 46.The writer wrote his first story when he (was being-was-has been-had been ) at university.
47. Crossing the street , he .....on the ice and broke his arm.
- a) was slipping                      b) slipped                      c) had slipped                      d) was slipped
48. (On- Without- Despite-While) seeing the accident, the motorists drove more carefully.
- 49- The room (was cleaning - was being cleaned - would clean) when the earthquake happened.
- 50-While my car..... I went shopping. (was mending -was being mended -had mended)

51-While my mother was doing the washing up, my baby sister ..... after.

- a) was looking    b) has been looked    c) was being looked    d) had looked

52- While ..... for the school bus, I met one of my old friends.

- a being waited    b am waiting    c was waiting    d waiting

53- While Samir was very busy doing his homework, his sister ..... to loud music; he wasn't able to concentrate.

- a had listened    b was listening    c is listening    d listened

54- I no longer play tennis as I .....

- a am used    b am used to    c used to    d used

55- What..... at 7 pm yesterday?

- a you were doing    b have you done    c were you doing    d did you do

56.I'd rather you ..... this car. It's a bargain.

- a. buy    b. to buy    c. bought    d. will buy

57.I entered the office and looked around. Most people ..... at their office.

- a) were working    b) worked    c) had worked    d) used to work

58.When I lived in London, I ..... through the park every day.

- a) walk    b) had walked    c) walked    d) was walking

59-.....I was out shopping, I saw three of my friends

- a) While    b) Although    c) Because    d) On

60.This car ..... to me three years ago.

- a) was belonging    b) belongs    c) has belonged    d) belonged

61.Amany phoned me while the dinner .....

- a) was cooking    b) cooked    c) cooks    d) was being cooked

62.While I ..... at home, a man knocked on the door and asked for help.

- a) was being    b) had been    c) was    d) am being

63.I ..... a noise while I was studying last night.

- a) hearing    b) heard    c) was hearing    d) heard

64.When she saw the fire coming out of the factory, she .....

- a) was screaming    b) had screamed    c) screamed    d) will scream

65.I couldn't open the door as I ..... a shower.

- a) had had    b) was having    c) had    d) has had

66. When I was at work, I forgot my problems with my wife. This means.....

- a. While at home, I forget all my problems.  
b. During work, I forgot all about my problems at home.  
c. At home, I felt worried about my work.  
d. While I was at work, I remembered all my problems.

67. I wish I ( meet- had met- would meet- met ) Ali yesterday.

68. I'd rather I had sold that car. This means.....

- a. I sold it    b. I hadn't sold it    c. I didn't sell it    d. I want to sell it

69. My classmate gave this book to me. This means.....

- a. My classmate was given this book by me.  
b. This book was given my classmate by me.  
c. This book was given to me by my classmate.  
d. This book was given to my classmate by me

70. " If I were you, I would take the job," said my room-mate. This means.....

- a. My room-mate was thinking about taking the job.  
b. My room-mate advised me to take the job.  
c. My room-mate introduced the idea of taking the job to me.  
d. My room-mate insisted on taking the job for me.

71. They made her hand over her passport. This means.....

- a. She was made to hand over her passport.    b. She was made hand over her passport.  
c. She was handed over to make her passport.    d. She was handed over her passport to make.

72. My brother and I went to that school. This means.....

- a. I went to that school and my brother, too.    b. I went to that school and so my brother did.  
c. I went to that school and so did my brother.    d. I went to that school and so my brother did, too.

73. My brother used to walk to school with his friends. This means.....

- a. My brother no longer walks to school with his friends.  
b. My brother is accustomed to walking to school with his friends.



- c. My brother hated walking to school with his friends.  
d. My brother doesn't walk to school with his friends no longer.

74- "I used to smoke." This means I .....

- a. smoke now      b. don't smoke now      c. no longer smokes      d. any longer smoke

75. Nobody told me that Ali was ill". This means.....

- a. I was told that Ali was ill      b. I wasn't told that Ali was ill.  
c. Ali wasn't told to be ill.      d. Ali was told not to be ill.

## Some skills

### Choose the best translation

دعنا نتدرب علي مهاره اختيار الترجمة الصحيحة

اولا نبداً انجليزي عربي

اقرأ الجملة الاتيه جيداً:

1-All parents should have an effective role in pushing and encouraging their children to share in their country's development .

للطلبة و الطالبات المجتهدين وليس الهيبه

١- حاول تحدد الكلمات الصعبة وتضع تحتها خط

٢- ترجم الجملة اولاً وحاول تكتبه ثم اقرأ الجمل لمتاحه وحاول التركيز عند الاختيار

١- يجب أن يكون لجميع الآباء دور فعال في دفع وتحفيز أطفالهم على المشاركة في تنمية بلدنا

١- يجب أن يكون جميع الآباء دور فعال في دفع وتشجيع أطفالهم على المشاركة في تنمية بلدهم

انظر لتلك الجمل و اكتشف الخطأ في الاولى مثلاً

الخطأ في الاولى لاحظ :

كلمه **encourage** مكتوبه يحفز لاحظاخر كلمه في الجملة ( الكلمه انجليزي ) **their country** ولكن

الترجمة ( بلدنا ) اذن الجملة بها خطئان

الثانيه صحص

اكتشف الخطأ لاحظت شيء الفعل (have) ليس موجود في الترجمة لكنه موجود في الجملة الاولى

خطأ بسيط ولكنه جعل الجمل غير مفهومه

الاجابه الصحيحه كالتالي

١- يجب أن يكون لجميع الآباء دور فعال في دفع وتشجيع أطفالهم على المشاركة في تنمية بلدهم

نحرب جملة ثانيه مرتبطه بالوحده

Ecotourism is considered a good source of national income in Egypt as Egypt has more and more isolated natural places that tourists like to visit.

١- تعتبر السياحة مصدراً جيداً للدخل القومي في مصر حيث يوجد لمصر المزيد والمزيد من الأماكن الطبيعية المعزولة التي يحب السياح زيارتها.

٢- تعتبر السياحة البيئية مصدراً جيداً للدخل القومي في مصر لان مصر بها المزيد من الأماكن الطبيعية المعروفة التي يحب السياح زيارتها

انظر للترجمة نمرة ٢ علشان تشوف الفرق

٣- تعتبر السياحة البيئية مصدراً جيداً للدخل القومي في مصر حيث يوجد في مصر المزيد والمزيد من الأماكن الطبيعية المعزولة التي يحب السياح زيارتها

عرفت نمرة ٢ صح ليه

اقول حاجه الثلاثه جمل خطأ لاحظ معايا واحده واحده

١- بها السياحة بدون البيئية وكمان كلمه as الافضل يكون معناها لان والمعني بعدها لا يتماشي مع لان

٢- بها خطاين الاول and more ليست مترجمه وايضا كلمه isolated مترجمه خطأ

٣- المفروض تكون صح مثل المثال الاول ولكن لاحظت ان كلمه natural مترجمه الطبيعه

اذن الصح

تعتبر السياحة البيئية مصدرًا جيدًا للدخل القومي في مصر حيث يوجد في مصر المزيد والمزيد من الأماكن الطبيعية المعزولة التي يجب السياح زيارتها  
اكتل علي الله وحرب بنفسك اول تمارين من اختارين فقط

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ توكلنا علي الله

1- Keeping the environment clean has become a necessity. Therefore, both individuals and governments must cooperate to create a healthy and clean environment .

١. أصبح الحفاظ على نظافة البيئة ضرورة. لذلك ، كلاهما يجب على الأفراد والحكومات التعاون لابتداع بيئة صحية ونظيفة  
٢. أصبح الحفاظ على نظافة البيئة ضرورة. لذلك ، فيجب على كلا من الأفراد والحكومات التعاون لخلق بيئة صحية ونظيفة

2. Reading is a means to develop culture, get useful knowledge during spare time and practice sport that helps to keep our physical fitness and renews energy.

١. القراءة وسيلة لتطوير الثقافة ، والحصول على المعرفة المفيدة في أوقات الفراغ وممارسة الرياضة التي تساعد في الحفاظ على لياقتنا البدنية وتجدد طاقتنا  
٢. القراءة تعني تطوير الثقافة ، والحصول على المعرفة الجيدة في أوقات الفراغ وممارسة الرياضة التي تساعد في الحفاظ على لياقتنا البدنية وتجدد طاقتنا  
٣. القراءة وسيلة لتطوير الثقافة ، والحصول على المعرفة المفيدة في أوقات الفراغ وممارسة الرياضة التي تساعد في حفظ لياقتنا البدنية وتنعش طاقتنا

3. Doctors have proved that those who don't smoke at all live a longer and healthier life. Therefore, the number of those who smoke has greatly decreased

١. أثبت الأطباء أن أولئك الذين يدخنون على كثيرا يعيشون حياة أطول وأكثر صحة. لذلك ، زاد عدد المدخنين بشكل كبير  
٢. أثبت الأطباء أن أولئك الذين لا يدخنون مطلقا يعيشون حياة أطول و صحية. لذلك ، انخفض عدد المدخنين بشكل كبير  
٣. أثبت الأطباء أن أولئك الذين لا يدخنون على الإطلاق يعيشون حياة أطول وأكثر صحة. لذلك ، انخفض عدد المدخنين بشكل كبير  
٤. أثبت الأطباء أن الذين لا يدخنون على الإطلاق يعيشون حياة أطول وأكثر صحة. لذلك ، انخفض عدد المدخنين كثيرا

النتيجة كام من ٦ درجات لان الترجمة عليها درجات خلى عندك ضمير  
التدريب علي عربي انجليزي الوحده الثانيه باذن الله

مقتبس من النابغه مستر مجد فوزي بارك الله فيه وفي كل من يحب

Essay writing

Skills

Writing

كيف تكتب مقال باللغة الإنجليزية؟

عليك اتباع التعليمات التالية:

- الخطوة الاولى تتمثل في تحديد موضوع المقال هل هو موضوع ايجابي او سلبي او مميزات و عيوب او موضوع عام.
- لا بد من عمل مسودة في اخر صفحة من ورقة الاجابة وبدء كتابة كل الجمل التي تستطيع كتابة دون ترتيب او تنسيق مع العلم اننا يمكننا الاستفادة من القطع او الترجمة او باقي الاسئلة في الامتحان في كتابة الموضوع.
- اكتب عنوان المقال في منتصف السطر وضع خطأً بالقلم الرصاص تحته.
- اترك مسافة بادئة indentation في أول سطر من موضوعك ما يعادل خمسة احرف بداية كل فقرة.
- ابدأ جملتك دائماً ب capital letter وقم بإنهاء الجملة ب full stop . والافضل استخدام الروابط بين الجمل.
- ابدأ موضوعك ب topic sentence أي جملة رئيسية تحتوي في مجملها علي تلخيص الفكرة العامة للموضوع.
- اترك مسافة واضحة بين الكلمة والأخرى.و يفضل ترك سطر في الكتابة

- ٨- حسن خطك قدر الإمكان ولا بد أن تكتب ما لا يقل عن ١٥٠ كلمة.
- ٩- عندما تنتهي من جملة لا تكتب الجملة التالية في سطر جديد منفصل بل قم بوضع full stop وإبدأ جملة جديدة في نفس السطر.
- ١٠- حاول الابتعاد قدر الإمكان عن أي تعبيرات أو كلمات صعبة حتى لا تقع في الخطأ. يمكنك كتابة موضوع أنيق بكلمات بسيطة حفظتها أنت جيداً.
- ١١- الشكل العام للكتابة هي الطريقة للوصول إلى أعلى الدرجات في البراجراف .
- ١٢- تناسب زمن الجملة مع سياق الموضوع ومراعاة الأخطاء الهجائية (Spelling mistakes) .
- ١٣- حاول تجميع أفكار رئيسية للموضوع و عمل Main points .
- ١٤- الامام بقدر كبير من الكلمات والمصطلحات و التعبيرات الشائعة مع حفظ الروابط التي تستخدم بين الجمل.
- ١٥- مراعاة الترابط والتنسيق بين جمل و أفكار الموضوع .
- ١٦- تجنب الجمل الطويلة بشكل عام . وأن تختار الكلمات المناسبة للتعبير عن الفكرة وتجنب استخدام الكلمات الغريبة

## الأجزاء الرئيسية للمقال The main parts of the essay

### 1) Introduction المقدمة

- ❖ هي الفقرة الأولى في المقال وتطرح الفكرة أو الهدف من كتابة الموضوع، وكيف يتم عرض الأفكار. بعض الجمل الافتتاحية التي تصلح لموضوعات المقالات الإيجابية بالنسبة للطالب الذي لا يجيد الكتابة، هناك مقدمات يمكن أن تساعدك مثل:
- We all agree that ... is one of the most important things in our life and has its vital role nowadays.
  - نتفق جميعاً أن ... واحد من أهم الأشياء في حياتنا وله دوراً حيوياً هذه الأيام.
  - We all agree that ... is (are) very necessary and plays (play) an important part in our life.
  - No one can deny that ... plays a very important role in our life.
  - لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن ... يلعب دوراً هاماً في حياتنا.
  - There is no doubt that this subject has affected our thought and caused a great impact on us.
  - لا شك أن هذا الموضوع قد أثر على فكرنا وأحدث تأثيراً علينا.
  - بعض الجمل الافتتاحية التي تصلح لموضوعات المقالات السلبية
  - There is no doubt that ... is one of the most dangerous phenomena in our life and has its bad and negative effects nowadays.
  - مما لا شك فيه أن ... هي واحدة من أخطر الظواهر في حياتنا وكذلك له أثاره السيئة والسلبية في وقتنا هذا.

### 2) Body: (الجزء الرئيسي) الموضوع

لا بد من تقسيم الموضوع لعدد من الأفكار. و تحدث عن كل فكرة في فقرة مستقلة. استخدم جمل بسيطة وواضحة.

### (3) Conclusion: (الخاتمة) (الخلاصة)

غالباً ما تتضمن فقرة الخاتمة ملخصاً للأفكار التي تم التعبير عنها أو النتيجة التي وصلت إليها. هذه النتيجة قد تكون نصيحة أو تحذير أو إعطاء رأي أو غيره. بعض الجمل الختامية التي يمكن استخدامها في الفقرات الختامية للمقال

Finally, it is quite clear that ... is really ....  
To sum up, one can say that ... is really ...

We all agree that ..... is one of the most important things in our life and has its vital role nowadays.

نتفق جميعاً أن ..... واحد من الأشياء المهمة في حياتنا و له دوراً حيوياً هذه الأيام.

We should put into consideration that ..... has become one of the most important things in everyone's life.

يجب أن نضع في الاعتبار ان ..... قد أصبح واحداً من أهم الأشياء في حياة كل شخص.

No one can deny that we owe much to ..... which play(s) an important role and active part in our life.

لا ينكر أحد أننا ندين بالكثير ل ..... الذي يلعب دوراً هاماً وفعالاً في حياتنا.

### For negative themes لموضوعات سلبية

We all see that...stands as an obstacle in the way of our progress.

نرى جميعاً أن.....يقف كعقبة أمام طريق تقدمنا.

There is no doubt that ..... is one of the most dangerous problems in our life as it has bad effects on us.

مما لا شك فيه أن.....واحدة من أخطر المشاكل في حياتنا لأنها لها آثار سيئة علينا.

We all believe that ..... is really serious and harmful nowadays and has bad effects on all of us.

نعتقد جميعاً أن ..... خطيراً و ضاراً هذه الأيام وله آثار سيئة علينا جميعاً.

### الموضوعات مزدوجة For advantages and disadvantages themes

There is no doubt that ..... is a double edge weapon that has both advantages and disadvantages.

مما لا شك فيه أن.....يعتبر سلاح ذو حدين لما له من مميزات و عيوب.

In fact that ..... is considered a mixed blessing in our life.

حقيقة أن.....يعتبر سلاح نعمة ونقمة في وقت واحد في حياتنا.

### ماذا عن صلب الموضوع؟ What about the body?

يمكنك استخدام هذه الروابط للربط بين الجمل

|                          |                  |                       |                    |
|--------------------------|------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| on one hand              | من ناحية         | on the other hand     | من ناحية أخرى      |
| in addition to that      | بالإضافة إلى ذلك | moreover              | علاوة على ذلك      |
| hence                    | ومن ثم           | at the same time      | في نفس الوقت       |
| and as a result of this, | ونتيجة لذلك      | more than that        | أكثر من ذلك        |
| over and above           | مضافاً إلى ذلك   | consequently          | نتيجة لذلك         |
| there is no doubt that   | مما لا شك فيه    | last but not least    | وأخيراً وليس آخراً |
| as far as i am concerned | كما أرى          | another thing is that | شيء آخر هو ان      |

الجملة التالية يمكن ان توضع وسط الموضوع لربط المقدمة بالموضوع الرئيسي وهي تناسب جميع الموضوعات.

- In addition to what I have written about .....before, I can add that.....

ابدأ جملتك بالعبارات التالية للتوكيد

|                                           |                            |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Everyone knows that + جملة                | الجميع يعرفون أن           |
| I reveal no secret when I say that + جملة | لا افشى سراً عندما أقول ان |
| It can't be denied that + جملة            | لا احد يمكنه ان ينكر ان    |
| It is crystal clear that + جملة           | من الواضح تماماً أن        |
| It is known that + جملة                   | من المعروف أن              |

### ماذا عن الخاتمة؟ What about the conclusion?

الخاتمة إيجابية أو سلبية

From what we have mentioned above we can say that due attention must be paid to this matter never be neglected as it is very **important (serious)**.

← مما ذاكرنه اعلي يمكننا القول ان يجب ان نولي اهتمامنا و نوجهه نحو هذا الموضوع و لا نتجاهله لما له من أهمية (خطورة).

← ربما تساعدك الجمل الآتية في كتابة الموضوعات المختلفة:

- 1) No one can deny that.... لا أحد يستطيع أن ينكر أن
- 2) plays a great role in تلعب دوراً كبيراً في
- 3) The progress of any nation depends on إن تقدم أي أمة يعتمد على
- 4) We should do our best in order to يجب أن نفعل ما بوسعنا لكي
- 5) In my opinion, ..has a great effect on our society. من رأيي ان .....له تأثير كبير على المجتمع
- 6) We can't ignore the great value of لا نستطيع أن نتجاهل القيمة العظيمة لـ



- |                                                                            |                                              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| 7) The government does its best to encourage                               | تبذل الحكومة ما بوسعها لتشجيع                |
| 8) The government is trying to solve this problem by...                    | تحاول الحكومة حل هذه المشكلة عن طريق         |
| 9) One advantage of .....is that it (they)                                 | أحد مزايا .. هي أنها..                       |
| 10) One disadvantage of .....is that it (they)                             | أحد عيوب .. هي أنها..                        |
| 11) .....is considered a very serious problem.                             | ..تعتبر مشكلة خطيرة                          |
| 12) To solve this problem, we should all                                   | لحل هذه المشكلة يجب علينا جميعا أن           |
| 13) We all agree that .....is one of the most important things in our life | نتفق جميعنا علي أن .. هو أهم شيء في حياتنا   |
| 14) .....is very useful as it helps us to...                               | ..مفيد للغاية حيث أنه يساعدنا في ..          |
| 15) With the help of .....we can lead a better life                        | بمساعدة .. يمكننا أن نحيا حياة أفضل          |
| 16) .....is a serious obstacle in the way of our progress                  | تمثل عقبة خطيرة في طريق تقدمنا               |
| 17) All members of the society should cooperate to ...                     | كل أفراد المجتمع يجب أن يتعاونوا لكي         |
| 18) We should exert more efforts to solve this problem                     | يجب أن نبذل المزيد من الجهود لحل هذه المشكلة |
| 19) We have to stand firmly against .....                                  | يجب أن نقف بحزم ضد                           |
| 20) We should make the best use of .....                                   | يجب أن نحقق أقصى استفادة من                  |
| 21) will help us to achieve self sufficiency                               | سوف يساعدنا علي تحقيق الاكتفاء الذاتي        |
| 22) We should develop public awareness of.....                             | يجب أن ننمي الوعي العام بـ                   |
| 23) All citizens should participate in solving this problem                | يجب أن يشارك كل المواطنين في حل هذه المشكلة  |
| 24) It increases our national income.                                      | يزيد من الدخل القومي                         |
| 25) It achieves progress, welfare and prosperity.                          | يحقق التقدم والرفاهية والرخاء                |

### Why tourism is important for Egypt.

Tourism is the second earner of foreign currency for Egypt. Millions of tourists come from all over the world to visit Egypt every year. They come to Egypt for many reasons. They want to enjoy the warmth of the weather and visit all ancient monuments.

Tourism has many advantages for our country. It is a main source to increase national income and develop national economy. Tourists add a lot of money to the income of our country. They spend money on flights, hotels, museums, restaurants and transport. This provides our country with hard currency and provides jobs for the unemployed. Tourism is also important to make visitors know more about our history, culture, customs, traditions and language.

We should increase the number of people visiting Egypt every year by fighting terrorism which is tourism's great enemy. We have to be civilized and friendly to tourists. The government should set up modern hotels and offer accommodations at reasonable prices. Last, but not least, it is a must that we do our best to benefit from tourism.

### حان وقت التدريب

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (150 words) on ONE (1) of the following:

1. My role model
2. The role played by charitable organizations in our society.
- 3-The pros and cons of social media.
- 4- What can you do to help your community?
5. The value of co-operation
- 6-The job you dream of doing in the future.
- 7-Team work.
- 8-How to choose a true friend.
- 9-How to encourage tourism in your country
- 10-pollution in your city or village
- 11-Education helps to make your life better.
- 12-The qualities of a good writer
13. The importance of sports in our life"

### Think well

1-.....he was a student, he was writing short stories.

a. After                      b. As soon as                      c.While                      d. On

2. Someone next door... heavy metal music all night long. I didn't get a wink of sleep.

a. was playing      b. has played      c. had been played      b. has been playing

3. Although the police suspected him, he was able to prove that he..... when the crime was committed.

a. was working      b. worked      c. had worked      d. had been working

4. When I was in Sharm El-Sheikh, I .....a lof.

a. have sunbathed      b. was sunbathing      c. would sunbathe      d. sunbathed

5..... reaching the airport, Ali found out that he had left one of his suitcases at home.

a. On      b. While      c. When      d. Despite

6- While ..... the new plan, Sami noticed that it was too long.

a. revise      b. revising      c. revises      d. revised

7. While I .....home, I saw soe of my friends.

a. walking      b. was walking      c. had walked      d. walk

8.....feeling the pain of the injection, she gave a spontaneous cry.

a. After      b. In      c. Before      d. On

9-They.....to spend the feast with us every year until we moved.

a. use      b. are used      c. have used      d. used

10.I'd rather you..... that car last year. It was a bargain.

a. buy      b. had bought      c. bought      d. to buy

Choose the best translation:

## Test One

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Choose the Two (2) correct answers out of the Five (5) options given:

1. My sister is a sociable person. She has a lot of friends. The antonyms of " sociable are.....

a. breakable      b. exotic      c. isolated      d. sustainable      e. risky

2. My uncle lives in an isolated town in the desert. " Isolated means.....

a. remote      b. massive      c. modern      d. faraway      e. close

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- ( As - While - During - When ) the film , I fell asleep.

2- While ( do-would do-had done- doing ) some business in London, he met his friend.

3- ( While-When-During-As ) my brother was twelve, he went to work in an office.

4- I didn't hear the mobile because I ( had- was having- have - had had ) a shower.

5- Our Prophet Mohammed was a/an ( important - interesting - unique - ordinary ) person.

6- Tourists like ( tourism - tours - economy - ecotourism ) as it's good for the environment.

7- While he was working as a journalist, he ( wrote - writes- was writing - writing ) stories.

8- Children like eating ( spicy - sugary - candy - sweet ) foods .

9- The factors of production are workers , capital and raw ( food - clothes - materials - ice).

10 The thief had a frightening (scarce- scar-scan-scale ) in his face.

11-( On - While - As - When ) arriving home I realised that I had lost my keys

12-My wounds had ( treked - swollen - relaxed - bored ) after being stung by a spider

13- The film was so ( nice - fine - boring - interesting ) so many people left before its end

14- ( Conservationists - Actors - Fans -Folks ) work hard to save endangered wildlife .

15-Egypt tries hard to make tourism ( is - was - be - to be ) sustainable.

16-I added ginger and cumin to give the rice a (-spice-specify -spiky -spicy) flavor

**Read the following passage then answer the questions: (10 Marks)**

Man's life has been subject to a lot of changes during the last hundred years, particularly in what is connected with his consuming habits. Sixty years ago, before the start of the consumer societies of today's world, people did not throw away so many of the things they used. They used and re-used bottles, jars, cardboard boxes, paper bags, etc. much more carefully than we do today. Nowadays, we are returning to the same good idea which we now call "recycling".

We can again think about what we throw out. Why do we throw away so much food packaging, so many plastic supermarket bags, old newspapers, old books, bottles and

cans? What is all this refuse doing to our environment and to the world we live in? Can't we use some of it again? The answer is: yes, we can.

New industries, recycling industries, are starting to re-use some of our rubbish. For example, the island of Taiwan now buys waste paper from the USA, and recycles it to make newspapers, and for use in offices and homes. Japan takes scrap metal from the USA and makes some new parts with it. Most European and American cities now have "recycling centers" for people's old bottles and newspapers.

All this recycling is not only good for the environment, but it is good business, too. For instance, a recycled aluminum container is 20% cheaper to make than a new one. For both the environment and the economy, recycling makes very good sense.

1- The best title for this passage is .....

- a) The pros and cons of recycling
- b) An old habit people need nowadays
- c) Recycling harms the environment
- d) A bad habit we miss

2- Recycling our rubbish means .....

- a) throwing it away b) keeping it c) using it again d) burning it

3- The underlined pronoun "it" in the third paragraph refers to .....

- a) paper b) Taiwan c) the USA d) metal

4- What "change" does the writer refer to in the first paragraph?

- a) People throw many things all the time.
- b) People became wasteful than before.
- c) People began to recycle old things again.
- d) People refuse consuming habits.

5- Without recycling, people will .....

- a) suffer from more environmental problems
- b) solve all the environmental issues
- c) buy more newspapers
- d) increase their good habits

6- The USA ..... scrap metal to Japan.

- a) borrows b) exports c) imports d) crushes

7- Our grandparents were ..... than we are today.

- a) less careful b) more careless c) more economical d) less wise

### Choose the best translation

1-Tourism can help individuals bring new ideas with them from the countries they visit.

- 1- يمكن للسياحة أن تساعد الأشخاص على جلب أفكار جديدة معهم من البلدان التي يزورونها .
- 2- يمكن للسياحة أن تساعد الأفراد على جلب أفكار جديدة معهم من المدن التي يزورونها .
- 3- يمكن للسياحة أن تساعد الأفراد على اكتساب أفكار جديدة معهم من البلدان التي يزورونها .
- 4- يمكن للسياحة أن تساعد الأفراد على جلب أفكار جديدة معهم من البلدان التي يزورونها .

### Choose the best translation

١- تشتهر سواحل البحر الاحمر بالشعاب المرجانية الفانقة الجمال التي تجذب السياح للاستمتاع برويتها

- 1- The coasts of the Red Sea are famous for their beautiful coral reefs, which attract tourists to enjoy their viewing
- 2- The shores of the Red Sea are famous for their beautiful coral reefs, which attracts tourists to enjoy their viewing
- 3- The coasts of the Red Sea are famous for its beautiful coral reefs, which attract tourists to enjoy their viewing
- 4- The coasts of the Red Sea are famous for its beautiful coral reefs, which attracts tourists to enjoy their viewing.

5) Write an essay of about 150 words on one only of the following topics:

Reading has many benefits.

# Unit Two

## Vocabulary

Supporting the community  
دعم المجتمع  
By: Mr El Sebael Atteya

|                       |               |                       |             |                        |               |
|-----------------------|---------------|-----------------------|-------------|------------------------|---------------|
| <b>admire</b>         | يعجب ب        | <b>ability</b>        | القدرة      | <b>go missing</b>      | يتوه - يضل    |
| <b>iron level</b>     | مستوي         | <b>score goals</b>    | يسجل        | <b>a success story</b> | قصة نجاح      |
| <b>desire</b>         | يرغب - رغبة   | <b>World Cup</b>      | كأس العالم  | <b>useful</b>          | مفيد          |
| <b>generous</b>       | كريم          | <b>finals</b>         | نهائيات     | <b>attack</b>          | يهاجم - هجوم  |
| <b>role model</b>     | قدوة          | <b>praise for</b>     | يمدح ل      | <b>worry about</b>     | يقلق          |
| <b>blood pressure</b> | ضغط الدم      | <b>donation</b>       | تبرع        | <b>change</b>          | يغير          |
| <b>intelligence</b>   | الدكاء        | <b>happiness</b>      | السعادة     | <b>work with</b>       | يعمل مع       |
| <b>donate</b>         | يتبرع ب       | <b>viewers</b>        | مشاهدين     | <b>employ</b>          | يوظف          |
| <b>long-term</b>      | طويل المدي    | <b>donor</b>          | متبرع       | <b>skills</b>          | مهارات        |
| <b>transplant</b>     | عملية زرع عضو | <b>Badly injured</b>  | مصاب بشدة   | <b>monitor</b>         | يراقب         |
| <b>transfusion</b>    | نقل دم        | <b>formal</b>         | رسمي        | <b>movement</b>        | حركة          |
| <b>achievement</b>    | إنجاز         | <b>regular</b>        | منتظم       | <b>party</b>           | حفلة - جماعه  |
| <b>Famous for</b>     | مشهور         | <b>personality</b>    | شخصية       | <b>biologists</b>      | عالم احياء    |
| <b>biography</b>      | سيره ذاتيه    | <b>check</b>          | يفحص        | <b>sense of</b>        | احساس ب       |
| <b>empathy</b>        | تعاطف         | <b>organ</b>          | عضو         | <b>track</b>           | يتتبع         |
| <b>charity</b>        | منظمه خيري    | <b>inspire</b>        | يلهم - يوحى | <b>information</b>     | معلومات       |
| <b>cancer</b>         | سرطان         | <b>biology</b>        | علم الاحياء | <b>make sure</b>       | يتأكد         |
| <b>chance</b>         | فرصة          | <b>villagers</b>      | فلاحين      | <b>hunter</b>          | صياد          |
| <b>nickname</b>       | اسم الشهرة    | <b>Guardian</b>       | وصي - حارس  | <b>as well as</b>      | بالاضافه ل    |
| <b>support</b>        | يؤيد - يساند  | <b>play for</b>       | يلعب ل      | <b>agreement</b>       | اتفاق         |
| take part in = share  | يشارك في      | <b>roar</b>           | يزار        | <b>compassion</b>      | رحيم          |
| <b>Blood Donor</b>    | متبرع بالدم   | <b>disappear</b>      | يختفي       | <b>documentary</b>     | وثائقي        |
| <b>illness</b>        | مرض           | <b>hope</b>           | يأمل        | <b>estimate</b>        | يحدد          |
| <b>health</b>         | صحة           | <b>amazing</b>        | مذهل        | <b>model</b>           | نموذج         |
| <b>benefits</b>       | فوائد         | <b>organization</b>   | منظمه       | <b>sign</b>            | يوقع - يافطه  |
| <b>find out</b>       | يكشف          | <b>Lion Guardians</b> | حماه الاسود | <b>angle</b>           | زاوية         |
| <b>save lives</b>     | ينقذ حياه     | <b>based in</b>       | مستقر في    | <b>belief</b>          | اعتقاد- ايمان |
| <b>conservation</b>   | المحافظة      | <b>nearby</b>         | يجانب       | <b>include</b>         | يشمل          |
| <b>interview</b>      | مقابله        | <b>aim of</b>         | هدف         | <b>locate</b>          | يحدد          |
| <b>recognize</b>      | يتعرف علي     | <b>local</b>          | محلي        | <b>appearance</b>      | مظهر - ظهور   |
| <b>The wild</b>       | الغابه - بري  | <b>livestock</b>      | ماشية       | <b>conclusion</b>      | خاتمه         |
| <b>earn money</b>     | يكتسب مال     | <b>reduce</b>         | يقلل        | <b>cute</b>            | لطيف          |
| <b>community</b>      | مجتمع         | <b>killing</b>        | قتل         | <b>expert in - on</b>  | خبير في       |
| <b>footballer</b>     | لاعب كرة      | <b>cattle</b>         | ماشية       | <b>headquarters</b>    | مركز          |
| <b>hometown</b>       | مسقط رأس      | <b>objective</b>      | هدف         | <b>paws prints</b>     | اثار مخالب    |
| <b>soccer</b>         | كرة قدم       | <b>tribe</b>          | قبيله       | <b>responsibility</b>  | مستويله       |

### Definitions

|                       |                                                                  |             |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| <b>admire</b>         | To respect and approve of person or their behaviour.             | يعجب ب      |
| <b>blood pressure</b> | a measure of the pressure at which blood flows through the body. | ضغط الدم    |
| <b>desire</b>         | a strong feeling that you want something.                        | رغبة - يرغب |
| <b>donate</b>         | To give money or goods to help a person or organisation          | يتبرع       |
| <b>generous</b>       | willing to give money, help, etc. especially more than it usual. | كريم        |
| <b>intelligence</b>   | Having a high level of mental ability, and good at thinking      | ذكاء        |



|                    |                                                                                                                             |                         |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
|                    | clearly and understanding ideas.                                                                                            |                         |
| <b>iron levels</b> | Iron is a chemical element which exists in small amounts in the blood. The level is the amount or quantity of iron present. | مستوي الحديد في الدم    |
| <b>long term</b>   | Continuing for a long time into the future. ( opposite: short term )                                                        | طويل المدي              |
| <b>role model</b>  | A person who people admire and whose behavior they try to copy                                                              | قدوه                    |
| <b>transplant</b>  | Medical operations in which a new organ is put into someone's body.                                                         | نقل عضو                 |
| <b>roar</b>        | A deep, loud noise made by an animal such as a lion.                                                                        | يزار                    |
| <b>prestige</b>    | The respect and admiration that someone or something gets because of their success or important position in society.        | احترام - مكانه اجتماعيه |
| <b>speed</b>       | How fast somebody or something moves or travels.                                                                            | سرعه                    |
| <b>agreement</b>   | An official document that people sign to show that they have agreed to something.                                           | اتفاق                   |
| <b>community</b>   | All the people who live in the same area.                                                                                   | مجتمع                   |

## Expressions

|                               |                     |                             |                    |
|-------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------|
|                               |                     | health problems             | مشاكل الصحة        |
| <b>Cancer hospital</b>        | مستشفى السرطان      | protect ... from            | يحمي من            |
| <b>along with</b>             | بطول                | go missing ( get lost )     | يتوه               |
| <b>a role model to others</b> | قدوه للآخرين        | the aim of the organisation | هدف المنظمة        |
| <b>make friends with</b>      | بصادق               | over hunting                | الصيد الجائر       |
| <b>iron deficiency</b>        | نقص الحديد          | world cup finals            | نهائيات كأس العالم |
| <b>kill for sport</b>         | يقتل كرياضه         | take part in / share in     | يشارك في           |
| <b>find out about</b>         | يكتشف عن            | desire to                   | يرغب في            |
| <b>be admired for</b>         | يعجب ب              | give a chance to            | يعطي فرصه ل        |
| <b>ability to</b>             | القدره ان           | easy to do                  | من السهل ان        |
| <b>search for</b>             | يبحث عن             | give nickname               | يسمي باسم شهره     |
| <b>reach (achieve) goals</b>  | يحقق اهداف          | on holiday                  | في اجازته          |
| <b>send Egypt to</b>          | يرسل مصر الي        | in groups                   | في مجموعات         |
| <b>be praised for</b>         | يمدح من اجل         | hear about lions            | يسمع عن الاسود     |
| <b>donations to charity</b>   | التبرعات للمنظمه    | sense of responsibility     | احساس بالمسئوليه   |
| <b>donate money to</b>        | يتبرع بالمال الي    | worry about                 | يقلق بخصوص         |
| <b>a long-term illness</b>    | مرض مزمن            | thanks to + v + ing         | بفضل               |
| <b>health benefits</b>        | فوائد صحيه          | do research                 | يقوم ببحث          |
| <b>have pressure checked</b>  | يفحص له الضغط       | benefit of                  | فائده ل            |
| <b>inspire ..... to</b>       | يلهم                | benefit from                | يستفيد من          |
| <b>amazing work of</b>        | عمل مذهل            | deal with                   | يتعامل مع          |
| <b>based in - on</b>          | مستقر في - مقتبس من | hear of - about             | يسمع عن            |

## Derivatives

| Verb     |        | Noun                           |                        | adjective                  |                   |
|----------|--------|--------------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------|
| donate   | يتبرع  | donation - donor               | تبرع - متبرع           |                            |                   |
| organise | ينظم   | organisation                   | منظمه                  | organised                  | منظم              |
| employ   | يوظف   | employer- employee -employment | صاحب عمل- موظف - وظيفه | employable                 | قابل للتوظيف      |
| amaze    | يذهل   | amazement                      | اندهاش                 | amazed - amazing           | مذهل              |
| support  | يؤيد   | support - supporter            | تأييد - مؤيد           | supportable - supportive - |                   |
| desire   | يرغب   | desire                         | رغبه                   | desirable                  | مرغوب             |
| benefit  | يستفيد | benefit                        | فائده                  | beneficial                 | مفيد              |
|          |        | prestige                       | مكانه اجتماعيه         | prestigious                | ذو مكانه اجتماعيه |

## Synonyms &amp; Antonyms

| Word         |  | Synonyms                       | المعنى | Antonyms                   |  |
|--------------|--|--------------------------------|--------|----------------------------|--|
| support      |  | advocate = assist = aid        |        | discourage=oppose=weak     |  |
| admire       |  | appreciate = esteem            |        | blame -dislike - criticize |  |
| desire       |  | longing = lust                 |        | hatred - dislike - disgust |  |
| desire       |  | ache - long - covet            |        |                            |  |
| donate       |  | give - present - bestow        |        | refuse - take - refrain    |  |
| generous     |  | charitable - unselfish         |        | greedy - selfish - stingy  |  |
| intelligence |  | intellect=acumen=wit           |        | Stupidity-ignorance        |  |
| disappear    |  | vanish-fade                    |        | appear - remain            |  |
| employ       |  | apply - operate- use           |        | dismiss- fire- discard     |  |
| employ       |  | employment- engagement         |        |                            |  |
| speed        |  | hurry - hurtle                 |        | delay - slow               |  |
| speed        |  | fastness - quickness- rapidity |        | slowness                   |  |
| monitor      |  | watch - observe - check        |        |                            |  |
| happiness    |  | joy - delight - pleasure       |        | despair - sorrow - misery  |  |
| wild         |  | Rough - violent- savage        |        | tame - domestic            |  |

## Language Notes

## 1- Irregular plural

| Singular |      | plural         | Singular |              | plural   |
|----------|------|----------------|----------|--------------|----------|
| man      | رجل  | men            | child    | طفل          | children |
| foot     | قدم  | feet           | tooth    | سنّة         | teeth    |
| wolf     | ذئب  | wolves         | wife     | زوجة         | wives    |
| half     | نصف  | halves         | loaf     | رغيف         | loaves   |
| hoof     | حافر | hoofs - hooves | roof     | سطح          | roofs    |
| woman    | سيدة | women          | shelf    | رف           | shelves  |
| knife    | سكين | knives         | proof    | إثبات - دليل | proofs   |

2-

**win:** (a medal ميدالية / a cup كأس / a race سباق / a competition مسابقة / a match / an award / a prize)**beat:** (someone شخص / a team فريق)**gain:** experience خبرة / information معلومات / Knowledge معرفة / weight وزن / height طول / speed سرعة يزداد**earn:** money / his living يكسب المال / عيشه (من العمل الجاد)

## Test yourself

- Brazil ( won- beat- earned- gained) the World Cup many times.
- Aswan ( won- beat- earned- gained) Zamalik 2 \ 0
- My father was a simple ,an . He worked hard to ( win- beat- earn- gain) our living.
- He ( won- beat- earned- gained) a good expeience as he travelled to many countries.

**2- score goals** يحرز أهداف **-give myself goals** يحدد أهداف **-reach /achieve goals** يصل لأهدافه

- He has **scored 12 goals** so far this season
- Unless you do your best, you won't **achieve your goal**
- I **give myself goals** and plan how to **achieve them**.

**3 - other** ( اسم جمع ) **- others** ( بدون اسم او فعل ) **- another + اسم مفرد** ( زيادة )

- Some people like English. **Other people** don't like it.
- I like this cake, **give me another one**.
- Some people like English. **Others** don't like it.

**4-Transplant** يزرع/ينقل عضو-His kidney **was transplanted** in his daughter**- Transport** ينقل(بضائع /ناس)

- Trucks are used for transporting oil



**Martin**, when did **Leelah** become **interested in** lions?

**Martin** : Well, as a child, her father told her stories about how he **listened to lions roaring at night** when he was sleeping on the roof of their house **during the summer**. But when he explained that there weren't any lions left in Egypt, she decided that when she **grew up**, she would **find out** how to save them in other countries.

**Interviewer** : What happened next?

**Martin** : She went to America to study conservation biology and then moved to Kenya to research lions among the Maasai people. It was there that she saw how quickly lions were disappearing. Did you know that sixty or fifty years ago there were about 200, 000 lions in Africa, but that number is under 20, 000 now?

**Interviewer** : So why are lions disappearing so quickly?

**Martin** : There are several reasons. People have built houses in the areas that lions **traditionally** hunt so they can't find enough food to eat, so they **attack the villagers'** livestock, you know, their cows and goats. The villagers get angry with the lions and kill them in order to protect their animals. **Another reason** is **prestige** – in **Maasai culture**, young men get **a lot of respect from** killing a lion. They are even given a lion name which shows that they are no longer a boy, but a man.

**Interviewer** : What did **Leelah** do?

**Martin** : She lived with **the Maasai** for a year and **listened to their views** about lions. She learnt that they have a love-hate relationship with lions; they admire their beauty but hate them for eating their cattle. She also understood the prestige that came from being **a lion killer** and realized that she needed to persuade the young men that keeping livestock and having a job gave them more prestige than killing a lion, so she **started to teach them** about the advantages of protecting lions instead.

**Interviewer** : Is that when she started **Lion Gurdians**?

**Martin** : Yes, **Lion Gurdians** is an organization that employs local people to **look for lions in order to protect them**. Remember, these young men already have **the skills needed** to track lions in the wild so they are taught to become lion guardians rather than lion killers. The organization gives them a job and teaches them to read and write so they can help conservations with their research.

**Interviewer :** How successful is the programme?

**Martin** : Very successful. **Maasai men** now have jobs, **a regular income** and **a sense of purpose**. They get to know the lions they are protecting and even give them names and talk about them **with fondness**.

**Interviewer** : And finally, what can other conservationists learn from **Lion Gurdians**?

**Martin** : The importance of listening to people in the community and to recognize how much knowledge local people have. **By working together** both the locals and conservations can benefit.

**Interviewer** : Thank you, **Martin**. And at 8 o'clock tonight you can see...

[illegible]

## People who help

## Mohamed Salah

**Mohamed Salah** is one of Egypt's most famous footballers. He **is admired** for his **intelligence** and ability **to score** goals. In 2017, he scored the goal **to send Egypt to their first World Cup**

finals **since 1990**. Salah **has been praised** for his kind and **generous donations** to charity in Egypt. He **donated** money to his hometown of Nagrig to build a school, and he has helped a

children's **cancer hospital** in Cairo. **Salah's desire to help** others is because he wants to give young people a chance to succeed. He is **a role model** to millions of Egyptians who gave him the nickname 'The Happiness Maker'.

@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@

### @@@ Blood donors

Every year **on 14th June**, countries around the world **take part in World Blood Donor Day**. Why should people donate blood? **Donating blood** can help people if they have been **badly injured** or need regular **blood transplants** because they have a **long-term illness**. Giving blood can also have health benefits. All donors have their **blood pressure** and **iron levels** checked **before donation**, so people **who donate blood** can **find out** quickly if they have any **health problems**. **Giving blood** can save lives and it is easy to do!

@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@

### Working together

Lions are **disappearing** all over Africa but there is some hope now after the **amazing work** of an organization **called Lion Guardians**, which **is based in** Kenya, but **Guardians** help in **nearby Tanzania**. The aim of **Lion Guardians** is to help local people to protect their own **livestock** and **reduce the number of lion killings** in the area. **Cattle are** important to the villagers but they often **go missing** or are attacked by lions. Then the lions are killed as villagers **worry about losing** more livestock. **Lion Guardians** is changing this. The organization works with the community to help **both the lions and their livestock** and this is done **by employing** local people. **Maasai men are chosen** to become guardians as they understand lions and have **the skills needed** to monitor their movements, find **missing livestock** and **stop hunting parties**. They **are taught** to be field biologists and **are given** a sense of responsibility. Lions **are tracked** every day and the information is sent to the cattle farmers who can then make sure their cows are safe. Guardians also **take part in reducing** the number of hunters who come to kill the lions for sport. **Lion Guardians is a success story** – helping the future of lions as well as the **local communities**.

### Exercises on unit : 2 (Voc.)

#### 1- Choose the Two (2) correct answers out of the Five (5) options given:

- 1- "I admire your idea." In this sentence, 'admire' is a synonym of.....  
a. praise                      b. approve of                      c. disapprove of                      d. appreciate                      e. prove
- 2- "She's a long-term illness." "Long-term" here means .....  
a. serious                      b. temporary                      c. short                      d. simple                      e. extended
- 3- "He donated some blood." The word 'donated' can be replaced by.....  
a. received                      b. gave                      c. kept                      d. give away                      e. give off
- 4- "I know you are generous." "Generous" here is antonymous with.....  
a. helpful                      b. miser                      c. mean .                      d. honor                      e. openhanded
- 5- Donate is to keep as.....is to stupidity.  
a. intelligence                      b. intelligent                      c. domestic                      d. tame                      e. brightness
- 6- Ten young people were employed in the company. The antonyms of " employed" are.....  
a. dismissed                      b. applied                      c. fired                      d. used                      e. operated
- 7- Nowadays , most houses are monitored by cameras." Monitor" means.....  
a. observe                      b. reserve                      c. watch                      d. object                      e. destruct
- 8- My uncle supports all his relatives. The antonyms of support are.....  
a. aid                      b. oppose                      c. advocate                      d. assist                      e. neglect
- 9- We should work hard to get success. The word " success " means.....  
a. victory                      b. triumph                      c. failure                      d. loss                      e. loose
- 10- Some prisoners escaped yesterday. The closest meanings to the word " escaped" are.....  
a. emigrated                      b. stayed                      c. counted                      d. evaded                      e. ran away

### Exercises on Vocabulary

#### 1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- Mohammed Salah is one of Egypt's most famous ( scientists - footballers -actors -singers ).
- 2- Salah is ( invented - discovered - admired - invited ) for his intelligence.



- 3-What makes Salah distinguished is his ( able – disability – capable – ability ) to score goals.
- 4-He ( registered – put – scored – achieved ) a decisive goal to send Egypt to the World Cup finals.
- 5-Being ( funny – lazy – beautiful – intelligent ) is one of the most qualities of a footballer.
- 6-My father is ( miserly – generosity – generous – stinging ). He always invites a lot of guests to have lunch.
- 7-The good footballer should work ( on – to – with – about ) his teammates.
- 8-"Resala" is an Egyptian ( school – pharmacy – hospital – charity ) which helps the poor.
- 9- Some boys adore football, ( others – other – another – one ) boys are keen on handball.
- 10- Thanks ( to – for – about – on ) modern inventions we lead a happy life.
- 11.A blood ( earner – donor – accountant – expert ) is someone who gives his blood to the injured.
- 12.The place where you were born and grew is called your ( downtown – city centre – town hall – hometown ).
- 13.We can ( win – earn – gain – beat ) the match easily if our players are fit.
- 14.We like to ( tease – criticise – praise – baize ) people who make great achievements
- 15- ( Junior – Professional – Amateur – Old ) players are paid much money.
- 16- ( Cancer – Colic – diarrhea – Sore throat ) is a fatal disease as it's incurable.
- 17- Our team ( won – scored – played – beat ) two goals and won the match.
- 18- I have seen him ( talks – talking – to talking – to talk ) about lions on TV.
- 19- You should study hard to ( win – score – achieve – beat ) your goal.
- 20- My father has influenced me a lot. I do just like him. He is my ( rule – roll – roller – role ) model.
- 21- The well-off should ( take – save – donate – generous ) a lot of money to rebuild our country.
- 22- No one can deny the ( role – rule – pole – mule ) which the various charities play in our country.
- 23- The World ( Medal – project- Cup- Mug ) is a great football event. It happens every four years
- 24- I go to hospital to examine my blood ( pressure – donor – quantity – amount ).
- 25.Dr El-Baz worked ( at – with – of – on ) many projects.
- 26.I have a strong ( headache – disease – desire – dessert ) to be one of the toppers this year.
- 27- Footballers are ( professionals – craftsmen – artists – actors ) not amateurs. Football is their job.
- 28- Mohammed Salah wants to give young people a ( money – chance – cup – champion ) to succeed
- 29- She is a famous weight lifting ( tennis – footballer – singer – player ). She has got a lot of medals.
- 30- Children take ( turns – part – place – photos ) in junior championships.
- 31.The " Plateau " " El-Hadaba " is a ( nickname – pen name – false name – fake name ) given to Amr Diab.
- 32.The Nile plays a ( small – minor – major – tiny ) part in the lives of all Egyptians.
- 33- Happiness is the synonym of ( sadness – grief – sorrow – delight ).
- 34.Can you ( give – take – make – paint ) photographs with this modern camera?
- 35.Egypt ( scored – won – gave – bought ) the Cup of African Nations in 2006, 2008 and 2010.
- 36- My father ( did-made- had- gave ) a serious operation last week and he is feeling well now.
- 37- The antonym of cheerful is ( happy – pleased – sad – delighted ).
- 38- The ( antonym – synonym – metaphor – rhyme ) of sorrow is happiness.
- 39.I want to take part in the ( blood – liver – heart – brain ) donor Day on 14<sup>th</sup> june.
- 40..Reclamation to reclaim is like ( development – developing – developed – develop ) to develop.
- 42- Dr Samira Musa was a nuclear scientist ( research – researcher -researching – searcher ).
- 43- ( How – What – Why – Whatever ) wonderful this villa is !
- 44.The ambulance took the people who were badly ( rewarded – injured – influenced – enjoyed

) to the nearest hospital.

45. My friend needs regular blood (transplant - transport - transmit - transfer) because of his long term illness

46. Do you think giving blood has health (benefits - useful - good - kindness).

47. All donors have their blood pressure and (steel - copper - iron - silver) levels checked.

48. Diabetes is considered one of the (short - along - long - belong) term diseases

49. Blood donors can find (on - out - about - for) quickly if they have health problems

50. "Well-known" is the synonym of (ignorant - kind - famous - unknown)

51. "Wish" is the synonym of (desire - generous - kind - famous)

52. My friend is a graduate (in - of - from - at) Cairo University.

53. Leila's father told her stories about lions. This (conspired - despair - inspired - aspired) her to study biology.

54. Those who live in the countryside are called (village - villagers - urban - city men)

55. Villagers are angry (with - of - from - by) the lions as they kill their cows and goats.

56. I haven't met my classmate for many years. I wish I could (know - recognize - apologize - despise) him.

57. Leila Hazzah works with the Lion (Players - Hunting - Guardians - Documents) who cares for lions

58. What other (conversation - conservation - perception - preservation) programme do you know about?

59. I am (boring - boredom - bored - bore) all my friends are away on holiday and I am stuck at home.

60. Your cousin helped (at - of - off - for) the community centre last week.

61. The organisation "Lion Guardians" is based (on - in - at - of) Kenya.

62. The aim of the Guardians is to help local people protect their (livestock - lipstick - stoves - sticks).

63. They aim to reduce the number of lion (death - savings - dying - killings) in the area.

64. Cattle are important to the villagers but they often go (lost - missed - missing - losing) or attacked by lions.

65. The new factory in our area will (work - employ - occupy - supply) a lot of university graduates.

67. Maasai men are chosen to become (guardians - goalkeepers - hunters - group) as they understand lions.

68. They have the skills needed to (moment - memory - monitor - minor) lions' movements.

69. Guardians also take part in reducing the number of (hunting - hunt - humour - hunters) who kill lions for sport.

70. Lions are (tracked - tackled - ticked - stuck) every day and the information is sent to the cattle farmers.

71. I really (amaze - reward - hate - admire) my mother because she does so much for us

72. A second nurse takes my blood (pressure - treasure - measure - pleasure) and checks my pulse.

73. Yacoub travelled thousands of kilometers in small planes to find (health - hearth - healthy - wealthy) hearts for transplants.

74. She developed progressive liver failure and required a liver (transport - transform - transplant - transfer)

75. You need a lot of (intelligent - intelligence - influence - intelligible) to be good at chess.

76. My dad offered to pay my plane fare, which was very (unkind - miser - mistake - generous) of him

77. Last year he (donated - made - debated - did) 500 pounds to cancer research.

78. Seriously sick people need long- (tram - turn - trim - term) care.

79. Millions of Egyptians gave Mohamed Salah the ..... 'The Happiness Maker'.

a. real name b. nickname c. surname d. pen name

80. I couldn't take (part - turns - place - care) in the race because I had broken my leg.

81. The country needs a leader who can (inspire - aspire - conspire - earn) its citizens.

82. Lion Guardians gave some men jobs so that they can (earn - gain - win - beat) regular money.

83. She's just retired after 38 years working (with - for - out - on) children

84. Surgeons, doctors and nurses work together to (score - achieve - arrive - get) the same goals

20. The surgeon accepted full ..... for the error that led to her death  
a) responsible b) irresponsible c) responsibility d) responsibly
86. International sports can ..... individuals and their countries.  
a) afford b) admire c) benefit d) distribute
87. I hadn't seen her for ten years, but I ( recognized - organised - realised - got ) her immediately.
88. The crew of a small fishing boat has ..... during a storm at sea.  
a) lost b) missed c) come d) gone missing
89. He has the ( able - capable - ability - disability ) to score many goals. He is very clever.
90. They ( killed - revised - poisoned - praised ) the man for his honesty.
91. People were ( attracted - attached - attacked - amused ) by the shark and many of them were killed.
92. ( Conversation - Dialogue - Conservation - Reservation ) of the environment is a joint responsibility.
93. Doing ( regularity - regular - irregular - regularly ) exercise helps people stay fit.
94. Three children were badly ( injured - sheltered - bordered - ordered ) in yesterday's accident.
95. Blood ( honours - doers - careers - donors ) are checked before their blood is taken.
96. Giving blood can ( send - end - save - endanger ) lives and it is easy to do.
97. People should give blood because it helps ( injury - injuries - injure - injured ) people.
98. The thief ( disappeared - went - did - worked ) among the fields and none could find him..
99. The rich man ( denied - saved - donated - dated ) all his fortune to a charity.
100. Giving blood can have ( health - healthy - wealthy - healthier ) benefits.
101. After the accident, the patient needed blood ( transport - transplant - transfer - transform )
102. Cows, goats and buffaloes are all ( livestock - birds - lipstick - sticks )
103. The King wanted to enhance his ( prestige - roar - donation - speed ) through war.
104. A ( geologist - biologist - archaeologist - artist ) is a person who studies living things.
105. The manager decided to ( deduce - induce - reduce - produce ) the number of the factory employees.
106. Blood donors have their blood pressure and iron level ..... before donation.  
a. check b. checked c. to check d. checking
107. Professor Magdi Yacoub is a ( roll - rule - role - reel ) model for all heart doctors.

## Grammar

### THE PRESENT SIMPLE TENSE المضارع البسيط

#### التكوين

يتكون المضارع البسيط من مصدر الفعل مع مع الضمائر ( they - we - you - I ).  
أما بالنسبة لـ he, she, it نصرف الفعل كالتالي:

١. نضع s في الحالة العادية. ( eats - runs - walks - sings )

٢. نضع es لو انتهى الفعل بـ x أو o أو sh أو ch أو s أو z .

( washes - watches - crosses - goes - mixes )

٣. إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف y مسبوق بحرف ساكن تحذف ونضيف ies . ( cries - tries )

٤- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف y مسبوق بحرف متحرك ( a / e / i / o / u ) نضيف s فقط ( enjoys - plays - )

( prays )

#### ٢. الاستخدام Usage:

نستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن:

عادات و أفعال متكررة habits:

E.g. I often watch television in the evening.  
Adel usually visits his relatives on Friday.

٢. حقائق الثابتة facts:

E.g. The sun rises in the east.  
The earth goes around the sun.

٣. جداول المواعيد الثابتة schedules:

E.g. I am traveling to London tomorrow. My plane leaves at 6 am.

٤. المواقف أو الأفعال التي دائما أو عادة حقيقية:

Mohamed Salah gives money to help people in his hometown

#### ٢. الكلمات الدالة:

الكلمات التالية كلها كلمات دالة على المضارع البسيط:

( **Always** دائماً , **usually** عادةً , **often** غالباً , **sometimes** أحياناً , **ever** دائماً/للأبد , **never** أبداً ,  
 بصورة متكررة **frequently** , بالكاد **hardly** , نادراً **seldom** , نادراً **scarcely** , نادراً **rarely** ,  
 (من وقت لآخر **from time to time** , بين الحين والآخر **occasionally** , كل **every** , عموماً **generally** ,

✗ يستخدم المضارع البسيط مع الظروف الزمنية الآتية وتأتي في نهاية الجملة أو أولها

every day/ every week / every year/ twice a week / twice a month/

→ Rania **goes** to the club every Monday. Every Monday Rania **goes** to the club.

✗ يستخدم المضارع البسيط مع ظروف التكرار و تأتي: قبل الفعل الأصلي أو بعد verb to be

- I **sometimes walk** to school.- My brother **often watches** TV.- I **am never** late for school.- She **is always tired** in the evenings.

## ٣. النفي Negation

١- نستخدم ( **don't** ) مع ( **i/ they/ we / you** ) وبعدها مصدر الفعل- They **don't like** pizza.I **don't play** football on Friday.٢- نستخدم ( **doesn't** ) مع ( **he/ she / it** ) وبعدها مصدر الفعلHe **doesn't want** a parrot.- she **doesn't want** a kitten.٣- يمكن أن نستخدم **never** للنفي مكان **doesn't** ويأتي بعدها فعل منتهي (s)Ex : Ahmed **doesn't study** English = Ahmed **never studies** Englishلأحظ الكلمات الدالة على المضارع البسيط بوجه عام تنفي بـ **rarely/ scarcely / seldom/ never** :

١- يستخدم المضارع البسيط مع أفعال الشعور والحواس والإدراك والعاطفة والتفكير بدلاً من المضارع المستمر:

like, dislike, love, think, seem, look, know, feel, understand, want, need, hate, see, remember, forget, prefer, believe, mean, taste, hear, have, possess, own,

- If you **play well**, you **will win**.

3- يستخدم مع الروابط الزمنية و يدل على المستقبل:

- **After he arrives**, we **will eat**.- They **will not go until he gives** them money.I **never get up** early.& I **always get up** early.She **rarely watches** TV at night.& She **usually watches** TV at night.

ملاحظات عامة

استخدامات أخرى للمضارع البسيط

- I **prefer** his way of thinking. - He **enjoys reading** romantic novels.

2- يستخدم مع الحالة الأولى (if) ( و يدل على المستقبل:

السؤال

? تكلمة الجملة + مصدر + (you/they) + **Do** + كلمة استفهام? تكلمة الجملة + مصدر + (اسم مفرد + (he/she/it/your) + **Does** + كلمة استفهام

✓- When do you go to school?

-- I go to school at 7 o'clock

✓- Where does she live, Sara?

-- She lives in America.

? تكلمة الجملة + مصدر + (you/they) + **Do**? تكلمة الجملة + مصدر + (اسم مفرد + (he/she/it/your) + **Does**

-Do you like fish ?

yes, I do /No, I don't

→Do they play tennis?.

yes, they do, No they don't

السؤال بهل

عند السؤال عن عدد المرات نستخدم

? تكلمة الجملة + مصدر + (فاعل) + **Does/do** + **How often**

( always-usually- never- every week-once – twice – three times ) أجابة بـ

How often do you go to the library ? I go to library twice a week

لاحظ استخدام **used to** ( **am / is / are / get / gets** ) (ويأتي بعدها اسم أو **V-ing**) للتعبير عن عادة في الوقت الحاضر- He **is used to playing** football at school .= He **often plays** football at school. = It is his habit to play football at school.

is/are + p.p مفعول +

→ Football **is played** around the world.

## The past simple tense الماضي البسيط

تم شرحه في الوحدة الاولى

### Choose the right answers

- 1 Mohamed Salah..... football in Liverpool.  
a. play                      b. playing                      c. plays                      d. is played
- 2 In 2017 my parents ..... to Luxor.  
a. are moving                      b. will move                      c. move                      d. moved
- 3 How often do you..... fruit and vegetables?  
a. eat                      b. ate                      c. eating                      d. to eat
- 4 Hala is going to be a scientist when she..... school.  
a. leave                      b. leaving                      c. leaves                      d. left
- 5 There..... thousands of people at the football stadium.  
a. be                      b. are                      c. is                      d. was
- 6 The TV presenter..... to her viewers in a very friendly way  
a. are talking                      b. talk                      c. talked                      d. talking
- 7-Your cousin .....at the community centre last summer  
a. is helping                      b. helped                      c. helps                      d. help
- 8-The young men..... to be field biologist  
a. are taught                      b. taught                      c. teach                      d. are teaching
- 9-The community..... to look after the lions  
a. encourages                      b. encourage                      c. is encouraged                      d. encouraged
- 10-Lions.....as much as in the past.  
a. don't kill                      b. aren't killed                      c. isn't killed                      d. doesn't killed
- 11) I .....so tired last night.  
a. am                      b. had                      c. is                      d. was
- 12) I .....asleep at half past eight yesterday.  
a. fall                      b. fell                      c. felt                      d. failed
- 13- Money.....into the area by the tourists  
a. brought                      b. brings                      c. are brought                      d. is brought
- 14) Omar..... . That's why he is always fit.  
a. smoke                      b. don't smokes                      c. doesn't smokes                      d. never smokes
- 15) When I was eight, I .....programme about a famous Egyptian doctor on TV.  
a. saw                      b. see                      c. am seeing                      d. seen
- 16) We are making a card for my brother. ....to help?  
a. Are you wanting                      b. Did you want                      c. Do you want                      d. Have you wanted
- 17) My sister .....working with children.  
a. enjoying                      b. enjoy                      c. is enjoying                      d. enjoys
- 18) After my father .....his work, he will take us to the club.  
a. finishing                      b. finish                      c. finishes                      d. had finished
- 19) .....you understand what the teacher says?  
a. Did                      b. Do                      c. Are                      d. Does
- 20)Ali always.....to work when he was young.  
a-walked                      b-walks                      c-is walking                      d-was walking
- 21)Karim .....at the school two years ago.  
a. start                      b. starting                      c. started                      d. is starting
- 22) I .....my new camera last week.  
a. buys                      b. am buying                      c. bought                      d. buy
- 23) My father .....in a bank in the city centre.  
a. works                      b. worked                      c. am working                      d. work
- 24-I would rather you ----- football with us.  
a. play                      b. played                      c. plays                      d. playing



- 25-Local people.....jobs by the organization.  
a. are giving      b. are given      c. is given      d. give
- 26 - Mona.....at school yesterday as she was absent.  
a. didn't see      b. doesn't see      c. wasn't seen      d. isn't seen
27. The last time I ..... my cousin was in 2015.  
a. have met      b. meet      c. met      d. was met
28. I ..... for five hours every day last week.  
a. work      b. have worked      c. working      d. worked
29. A terrible accident ..... in our street yesterday.  
a. happen      b. happens      c. happened      d. happening
30. Children often ..... their parents and grandparents to do things.  
a. helping      b. helped      c. helps      d. help
31. He got into the car and ..... down the road.  
a. drive      b. drove      c. drives      d. driving
32. He often ..... on radio and television.  
a. is speaking      b. spoken      c. has spoken      d. speaks
- 33-Surgeons ..... usually see small things by the naked eye  
a. didn't      b. aren't      c. doesn't      d. don't
34. When I was young, I used to ..... to the park every weekend.  
a. going      b. gone      c. go      d. goes
35. My brother ..... three languages.  
a. is speaking      b. spoken      c. speaks      d. speak
36. The sun ..... rises in the west.  
a. never      b. always      c. often      d. ever
37. It's a habit of ( I - me - my - mine ) to drink a big glass of water when I get up every morning
38. The crops ( collect - collected - was collected - were collected ) and transported to the market.
- 39- In many parts of the word , wood ( burn -burns -is burnt -are burnt ) to heat people's homes.
- 40 - Sugar cane ( grow -grows -grown -is grown ) and used to make fuel.
- 41- We ( pump -pumps -are pumped -is pumped )water to the surface and heat it again.
- 42 - Water ( pump -pumps -are pumped -is pumped )to the surface and heated again.
- 43 - The Pyramids were ( building -built -builds -build )by the ancient Egyptians.
- 44 - My father always ( was going -gone -go -goes ) to work on time.
- 45- They ( never are -are never - never is-can never) late for school.
- 46- My sister ( read -reads - has read -is reading) the newspaper every morning.
- 47 - The moon ( is moving -will move -moves -moved ) round the earth.
- 48 - Mr. Salem ( doesn't -never -didn't - won't ) comes to work late.
- 49- We ( believe -believes -are believing -is believing ) in Allah.
- 50 - English ( is spoken -will speak -is speaking -has spoken ) all over the world.
- 51 - The house ( heated -heats - is heated - are heated )by the sun.
- 52- ( Do -Does - Is -Are ) the letter written?
- 53- Scientists ( is wanted - wanted -has wanted -want) to find new sources of renewable energy
- 54 - Which model ( was going -gone -go -goes ) 540 kilometers per hour? (2012)
55. The livestock on this farm ( is - are - is or are - has ) looked after by three workers.
56. The cattle on this farm ( is - are - is or are - has ) looked after by three workers.
57. He no longer (smoke - smokes - smoked -never smokes ) as he used to do.
58. He never ( is - was - got - get ) used to eating in class.

## Some skills

### Choose the best translation

دعنا نتدرب على مهاره اختيار الترجمة الصحيحة  
اولا نبدأ عربي انجليزي  
اقرأ الجملة الاتيه جيدا:

١- تبذل الحكومة أقصى جهدها لتمكين المواطن المصري من مجابهه ارتفاع تكاليف المعيشة.  
الان ترجمها في ورقه  
حاول تختار الاجابه الصحيحه من الجملتان

- 1- The government is doing her best to enable the Egyptian citizen to cope with the high cost of living.  
2- The government is doing every effort to enable the Egyptian citizen to cope with the high coast of living.

هل اخترت ( اي الاختيرين صح )

١- الاول خطأ ( لان her best ) المفروض تكون its best لان الحكومة غير عاقل مفرد  
اذن الثانيه صح بالطبع لا لوجود خطأين الاول doing every effort المفروض تكون making  
every effort ويوجد خطأ اخر مين الي هيعرفه شوف الاجابه الصح

1- The government is making every effort ( or does its best ) to enable the Egyptian citizen to cope with the high cost of living.

هل اكتشفت الخطأ الثاني

محاولة اخرى

٢- الخروج من وادي النيل الضيق واستصلاح الصحراء هما أملنا الوحيد في حياه أفضل للأجيال القادمة.

اختار الترجمة الصح دعنا نحاول

1- Getting out of the narrow Nile Valley and repairing the desert are our only hope for a better life for next generations.

2- Getting out of the narrow Nile Valley and reclaiming the dessert is our only hope for a better life for next generations.

3-Getting out of the narrow Nile Valley and reclaiming the dessert is our only hope for better life for next people.

خد نفس وركز واختار

شوف اختيارك صح ولا لا

1- Getting out of the narrow Nile Valley and reclaiming the desert are our only hope for a better life for next generations.

طبعا كل الاختيارات خطأ لانك مش مركز

استخرج كل الاخطاء لوحك بالمقارنه لكي تتعلم

الان اكل علي الله وحل لوحك مع المستر بصحح

Choose the best translation

١- على الشباب أن يتسلح بالعلم و التكنولوجيا كي يصلوا لأهدافهم

1-Young people should arm them by science and technology in order to reach their goals

2-Young people should arm themselves with science and technology in order to reach their goals

3-Young people should arm themselves by science and technology in order to reach the goals

4-Young people should arm themselves with science and technology to arrive their goals

٢ إن موقع مصر المتميز و آثارها الرائعة جعلها واحدة من أهم الدول السياحية في العالم

1- Egypt's distinguished location and its wonderful monuments make it one of the most important tourist cities in the world.

2- Egypt distinguished location and its wonderful monuments make her one of the most important tourist countries in the world.

3- Egypt distinguished location and its wonderful monuments make her one of the most important tourist countries in the world.

4- Egypt's distinguished location and its wonderful monuments make it one of the most important tourist countries in the world.

3- إن مستقبل الحياة علي الأرض يتوقف علي نجاح الجهود التي نبذلها للتخلص من التلوث البيئي

1-The future of life on Earth depends on the success of our efforts to get rid of environmental pollution.

2-The future of life on ground depend on the success of our efforts to get rid of environmental pollution.

3-The future of life on Earth depends on the success of our efforts to get rid of environmental pollution.

4-The future of life on ground depend on the success of the efforts to get rid of environmental population.

Choose the best translation

There is nothing humans require more than freshwater: without water we can only survive just a few days.

١. لا يوجد شيء يحتاجه الإنسان أكثر من المياه العذبة: فبدون الماء يمكننا أن نعيش سوى أيام قليلة.

٢. لا يوجد شيء يحتاجه الإنسان أكثر من المياه العذبة: فبدون الماء لا يمكننا أن نعيش سوى أيام قليلة.

٣. يوجد شيء يحتاجه الإنسان أكثر من المياه العذبة: فبدون الماء لا يمكننا أن نعيش سوى أيام قليلة.

٤. لا يوجد شيء يحتاجه الإنسان أكثر من المياه المالحة: فبدون الماء لا يمكننا أن نعيش أيام قليلة.

2- The sun provides humans and some animals with food as it helps the plants to make its own food by the photosynthesis process.

1. توفر الشمس للإنسان بعض الحيوانات والطعام لأنها تساعد النباتات على صنع طعامها من خلال عملية التشكيل الضوئي.
2. تمد الشمس الإنسان وبعض الحيوانات بالطعام لأنها تساعد النباتات على صنع طعامها من خلال عملية التمثيل الضوئي.
3. تمد الشمس الإنسان وكل بعض الحيوانات والطعام لأنها تساعد النباتات على صنع طعامها من خلال عملية التمثيل الضوئي.
4. توفر الشمس للإنسان وبعض الحيوانات والطعام لأنها تساعد الكواكب على صنع طعامها من خلال عملية التمثيل الضوئي.

3 Personal skills are qualities that are needed if you want to succeed in your career.

- ١ المهارات الشخصية هي الصفات المطلوبة إذا كنت ترغب في النجاح في وظيفتك المهنية.
- ٢ المهارات الانسانية هي الصفات المطلوبة إذا كنت ترغب في النجاح في حياتك المهنية.
- ٣ المهارات الشخصية هي الصفات المطلوبة إذا كنت ترغب في النجاح في حياتك العلمية.
- ٤ المهارات الشخصية هي الصفات المطلوبة إذا كنت ترغب في النجاح في حياتك المهنية.

## Test Unit Two

### Test Two

1- Choose the Two (2) correct answers out of the Five (5) options given:

- 1-The organisation should prevent hunting parties from filling lions. " Parties " here means....  
a. men b. groups c. teams d. festivals e. feasts
- 2- There are a lot of students will take part in the race. The antonyms " take part" means.....  
a. divide b. attack c. share d. avoid e. abandon

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- Leila Hazzah is ----- by her father's stories.  
a) inspired b) desired c) employed d) graduated
- 2-Ramy Ashour -----an important championship in squash  
a) won b) earned c) gained d) beat
- 3- Blood donors have managed to ----- many lives from death.  
a) serve b) end c) save d) conserve
- 4- I think he suffers from anemia . He should have his blood ----- checked.  
a) iron b) pressure c) balls d) goals
- 5- The Egyptians have given Salah the ----- "Happiness Maker "  
a) pen name b) real name c) nickname d)surname .
- 6-Amal ----- television every day.  
a) watch b) is watching c) was watching d) watches
- 7-Ali -----a goal in a school football match yesterday.  
a) scored b) won c) played d)took
- 8-Villagers desire to get rid of lions as they kill their -----  
a) kettle b) livestock c) cotton d) wool
- 9-I used to smoke but now I don't smoke any -----  
a) longer b) most c) long d) longest
- 10----- wood float if you throw it in water?  
a) Will b) Do c) Does d) Would
- 11-The role of ----- is to help those who are in abject poverty  
a) conservation b) conservationists c) charities d) guardians
- 12- Why do you think lions ----- by hunters ?  
a) killed b) are killing c) kill d) are killed
- 13-Can you help me ----- this photo ?  
a) hung b) hang c) hanging d) to hanging
14. Brave soldiers usually fight and.....their country.  
a. defeat b. attack c. defend d. defect

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer:

With the development of modern civilization, life has become more and more complicated. As a result,

the car, which was once considered a luxury, is now looked upon as a necessity. Doctors, engineers and businessmen cannot work without private cars. Moreover, the rapid growth of population in capitals and main cities has actually made the joy of possessing a car much less. Besides the problems of keeping a car in good condition and the lack of garages, there is the big problem of crowded streets. Most people insist on having a private car to avoid the long wait at a bus stop. To get on or off the bus is a hard struggle. Going to places by taxi does not solve the problem as taxi drivers take passengers according to rules they themselves set. They sometimes ask for more money than they deserve. Cars could be a source of trouble. Many people have to leave their cars in the streets because garages are expensive and crowded. This exposes them to rusting or robbery. In rush hours streets are so blocked that it takes a driver age to get to his destination.

**A ) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1.**Taking a public bus is a problem because .....  
a. it is expensive                               **b** getting on and off the bus is difficult  
**c** it is very slow                                  **d** bus drivers drive carelessly
- 2.**The underlined pronoun " they " in line 10 refers to .....  
**a** taxi drivers              **b** taxies                      **c** buses              **d** passengers
- 3.** Most people insist on possessing a private car to keep ..... the long wait at bus stop.  
**a** up                      **b** away from                      **c** on                      **d** down
- 4.** Possessing a private car is ..... to doctors and engineers.  
**a**) unnecessary                      **b** difficult                      **c** indispensable                      **d** bad
- 5.**The underlined word complicated means .....  
**a** easy to solve                      **b** familiar                      **c** complex                      **d** similar
- 6.**When are cars, according to the writer, exposed to robbery?  
**a** when they aren't locked                      **b** when they aren't covered  
**c** when they are left in garages                      **d** When they are left in the street
- 7.**The best title for the passage is .....  
**a** The advantages of private cars                      **b** The disadvantages of private cars  
**c** Private cars are a mixed blessing                      **d** Avoiding private cars

**choose the best translation:**

**1-Hopes and ambitions are achieved by hard work and strong will , not by dreams or wishes**

- ١-تحقق الآمال والطموحات العمل الجاد والإرادة القوية وليس الأحلام أو الرغبات
- ٢-تتحقق الآمال والطموحات بالعمل الجاد والإرادة القوية وليس بالأحلام أو بالرغبات
- ٣-تتحقق الآمال والطموحات بالعمل الجاد والوصية القوية وليس بالأحلام أو بالرغبات
- ٤-تتحقق الآمال والطموحات بالعمل الجاد والإرادة القوية وبالأحلام أو بالرغبات

٢- يجب أن تكون المنتجات المصرية عالية الجودة لكي تتمكن من منافسة المنتجات الأخرى في الأسواق العالمية.

1. Egyptian productions must be of high quality in order to being able to compete with other products in the global markets.
2. Egyptian products must be of high quality in order to be able to competition with other products in the global markets.
3. Egyptian products must be of high quality in order to be able to compete with other products in the global markets.
4. Egyptian products must be of high quality in order to be able to compete with other productions in the global markets.

**Write an essay of (150) words on the following topic:**

## Voluntary work

# Unit Three

## Vocabulary

English

First Term

Improving our lives

تحسين حياتنا

By: Mr El Sebael Atteya

|               |                 |             |                |                |                |
|---------------|-----------------|-------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| debts         | ديون            | improvement | تحسن           | suggestion     | اقتراح         |
| earn          | يكتسب           |             |                | voluntary      | تطوعي          |
| merchant      | تاجر            | parents     | الوالدين       | volunteer      | متطوع          |
| owe           | مدين ل          | extract     | يستخرج         | city           | مدينة          |
| miserable     | بائس            | modern      | حديث           | brief          | اختصار         |
| plump         | بدن - سمين      | building    | بناء           | message        | رسالة          |
| prison        | السجن           | hurt        | يؤذي           | expert in - on | خبير في        |
| rat           | فار             | terrible    | فظيع           | respect        | يحترم - احترام |
| borrow        | يستعير          | factory     | مصنع           | disabled       | معاق           |
| cotton        | قطن             | similar     | مشابه          | express        | يعبر عن        |
| sell          | يبيع            | difficult   | صعب            | expression     | تعبير          |
| goods         | بضائع           | novel       | قصة            |                |                |
| theatre       | مسرح            | high school | مدرسه عليا     | idea           | فكرة           |
| ticket        | تذكرة           | partner     | شريك           | angry          | غاضب           |
| break         | يكسر            | writer      | كاتب           | reader         | قارئ           |
| criminal      | مجرم            | successful  | ناجح           | spend          | يقضي           |
| country       | بلد             | stepfather  | زوج الام       | experience     | خبرة           |
| happen        | يحدث            | change      | يغير           | experiences    | تجارب حياه     |
| arrange       | يعد - يرتب      | a group of  | مجموعة من      | factual        | حقيقي          |
| hard work     | العمل الجاد     | the rich    | الاعنياء       | arrest         | يقبض علي       |
| empty bottles | زجاجات فارغة    | worse       | اسوأ           | brainstorm     | عصف ذهني       |
| traditions    | تقاليد          | law         | قانون          | morals         | اخلاق          |
| hate          | يكره            | helpful     | مساعد          | suggest        | يقترح          |
| tired-looking | يبدو عليه التعب | opinion     | راي            | youth          | الشباب         |
| lady          | سيده            | clothes     | ملابس          | gang           | عصابة          |
| discover      | يكتشف           | opportunity | فرصة           | note           | ملحوظة         |
| twins         | توأم البينه     | happen      | يحدث           | structure      | بناء           |
| several       | عديده           | main        | اساسي          | empathy        | تعاطف          |
| the police    | البوليس         | character   | شخصية          | association    | منظمه          |
| pound         | جنيه            | solve       | يحل            | beliefs        | معتقدات        |
| trick         | يخدع            | surprise    | مفاجاه         | crescent       | الهلال         |
| admit + v+    | يعترف ب         | interests   | اهتمامات       | master         | يجيد - سيد     |
| pass the exam | ينجح في         | destination | جهة وصول - سفر | culture        | صقافه          |
| review        | مقاله نقديه     | brilliant   | لامع - ذكي     | deserve        | يستحق          |
| entertain     | يستضيف          | plumber     | سباك           | crew           | طاقم           |
| parrot        | بغيان           | barrel      | برميل          | pirate         | قرصان          |

### Definitions

|           |                                                           |              |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| debt      | money that you must give back to someone'                 | دين          |
| earn      | Money you receive for doing work.                         | يكتسب        |
| merchant  | A person who buys and sells a lot of goods .              | تاجر         |
| owe       | to have to pay money back or things that belong to others | مدين ل       |
| miserable | very unhappy, sad                                         | بائس         |
| plump     | slightly fat in a nice way .                              | ممتليء الجسم |
| prison    | a building where criminals are kept as a punishment'      | سجن          |
| rats      | animals like big mice with long tail' s                   | فئران        |



|                          |                                                                                                                    |              |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| <b>criminal</b>          | A person who commits a crime                                                                                       | مجرم         |
| <b>burglary</b>          | The crime of entering a building <b>illegally to steal things</b>                                                  | سرقة - سطو   |
| <b>steal</b>             | To take things from someone or a place <b>without permission or paying</b>                                         | يسرق         |
| <b>thief</b>             | A person who steal something from another one or place                                                             | لص           |
| <b>harbour</b>           | An area of water next to land where ships can stay safely.                                                         | ميناء        |
| <b>journalist</b>        | someone who <b>writes for</b> newspapers                                                                           | صحفي         |
| <b>novel</b>             | a story about people that are real                                                                                 | قصة          |
| <b>mutiny</b>            | When a group of people <b>refuse to obey</b> the person in charge of them and take <b>control for themselves</b> . | تمرد - عصيان |
| <b>moral</b>             | A lesson to be learned from a story                                                                                | درس اخلاقي   |
| <b>choice</b>            | A <b>decision to choose</b> one thing or person rather than another                                                | اختيار       |
| <b>reward</b>            | To be given something good for something you have done                                                             | يكافئ        |
| <b>crutch</b>            | A special stick which you put under your arm to help you walk.                                                     | عكاز         |
| <b>pirate</b>            | A sailor who attacks ships and steals from them.                                                                   | قرصان        |
| <b>gang</b>              | A group of people that causes trouble.                                                                             | عصابة        |
| <b>community</b>         | A group of people with the same interests, nationality or religion.                                                | مجتمع        |
| <b>culture</b>           | The beliefs and traditions of a group of people.                                                                   | ثقافة        |
| <b>Food bank</b>         | A place where people collect food to give others                                                                   | بنك الطعام   |
| <b>Voluntary work</b>    | A job that people <b>do for no money</b> .                                                                         | عمل تطوعي    |
| <b>Youth association</b> | A group of young people who <b>do things</b> together.                                                             | منظمة الشباب |

### Expressions

|                                  |                     |                             |                     |
|----------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>play a trick on</b>           | يخدع                | <b>half brother</b>         | اخ غير شقيق         |
| <b>give a hand to</b>            | يساعد               | <b>make a difference</b>    | يعمل اختلاف         |
| <b>send to prison</b>            | يسجن                |                             |                     |
| <b>on his own = alone</b>        | بنفسه               | <b>send away</b>            | يطرد                |
| <b>take ... (away) to prison</b> | يرسل للسجن          | <b>adopt a project</b>      | يتبنى مشروع         |
| <b>owe .... some money</b>       | عليه ل.... فلوس ل   | <b>on one hand</b>          | من ناحية            |
| <b>owe money to ...</b>          | عليه فلوس ل         | <b>on the other hand</b>    | من ناحية اخرى - لكن |
| <b>pay money back</b>            | يسدد                | <b>spend money on .....</b> | ينفق علي            |
| <b>pay for (something)</b>       | يدفع                | <b>spend time + v-ing</b>   | يقضي وقت            |
| <b>hear from</b>                 | يسمع من             | <b>lead to + v. + ing</b>   | يؤدي الي            |
| <b>opinion about</b>             | رأي بخصوص           | <b>at the beginning of</b>  | في بدايه            |
| <b>Why don't you + inf...?</b>   | ما رأيك في          | <b>because of</b>           | بسبب                |
| <b>How about + v-ing ...?</b>    | ما رأيك في          | <b>in pairs</b>             | ثنائيات             |
| <b>get into debt</b>             | يصبح مدين           | <b>tired of</b>             | تعبان من            |
| <b>children's labour</b>         | عماله الاطفال       | <b>criminal act</b>         | سلوك اجرامي         |
| <b>do/commit a crime</b>         | يرتكب جريمة         | <b>go wrong</b>             | يتعطل               |
| <b>break into - in</b>           | يقتحم من اجل السرقة | <b>do wrong</b>             | يخطيء               |
| <b>break the law</b>             | يخالف القانون       | <b>fall ill</b>             | يصبح مريض           |
| <b>run after</b>                 | يطارد               | <b>cruel to</b>             | قاسي ل              |
| <b>think of / about</b>          | يفكر في             | <b>agree with</b>           | يتفق مع             |
| <b>The moral of the story</b>    | الهدف من القصة      | <b>do voluntary work</b>    | يقوم بعمل تطوعي     |
| <b>run away</b>                  | يهرب                | <b>Make a visit to</b>      | يقوم بزياره         |
| <b>in groups</b>                 | في مجموعات          | <b>fall asleep</b>          | يسقط نائما          |

## Derivatives

| Verb        | Noun                   | adjective               |
|-------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| improve     | improvement            | improved                |
| affect      | effect                 | effective               |
| die         | death                  | deadly - dead           |
| imprison    | prison - prisoner      |                         |
| merchandise | merchandise - merchant | merchant - merchantable |
| differ      | difference             | different               |
| discover    | discovery              |                         |
|             | miser - misery         | miserable               |

## Synonyms &amp; Antonyms

| Word      | Synonyms                      | المعنى | Antonyms                |
|-----------|-------------------------------|--------|-------------------------|
| arrange   | organise                      | ينظم   | disarrange - disorder   |
| borrow    | acquire                       |        | lend                    |
| dirty     | contaminated                  |        | clean                   |
| empty     | vacant                        |        | full                    |
| hard      | tough                         |        | Soft - delicate         |
| hate      | dislike                       |        | love                    |
| miserable | unhappy - sad                 |        | cheerful - happy        |
| plump     | chubby                        |        | thin                    |
| tired     | exhausted                     |        | active - lively - fresh |
| honest    | trustful                      |        | dishonest               |
| admit     | confess                       |        | deny - conceal          |
| common    | Widespread - usual - ordinary |        | unusual - rare          |
| voluntary | unpaid                        |        | paid - compulsory       |
| earn      | acquire - attain              |        | lose - forfeit          |
| disabled  | handicapped - unfit           |        | able-bodied             |
| criminal  | lawbreaker = sinner           |        |                         |
| merchant  | dealer - trader               |        |                         |

## Language Notes

1-in debt = indebted مديون

debt دين

debit خانة المدين للبنك

2- Criminal مجرم/ إجرامي

crime جريمة

do / commit a crime يرتكب جريم

3- own يملك

( owe ...to )

مدين لشخص بشيء

We owe much money to the bank.

He owns a red car.

4 - good at في جيد

# good for لـ مناسب

# good to على عطوف

- He is good at remembering names.

- This place is good for your health.

5- Other + اسم جمع

- others

( بدون اسم ) اخرون

- another

+ ( اسم مفرد ) اضافي - زيادة

Some people like English. Other people don't like it.

Some people like English. Others don't like it.

I like this cake, give me another one.

6 - life

( الحياة بوجه عام )

- اسم لا يعد و لا يسبقه أداة

There is no life on the moon.

- Life is fun.

- He leads a happy life .

- The life of + ( اسم يعيد ) نوع معين من حياه

What do you know about the life of El Sadat?

نشيط

lively

- مباشر

live الحياة

alive - حي / على قيد الحياة

7. Realize

( يدرك - يفهم )

- recognize

( يتعرف علي شخصت - شيء )

**-When I saw my friend, I couldn't recognize him. He changed a lot.**

**the poor / the rich / the disabled / the deaf / the blind / the dumb / the sick / the dead /  
the young / the old / the homeless / the elderly / the unemployed**

- The poor ( **is- are** ) people who need help.

- He works **as** an engineer. / He wears glasses **like** his father. / The two children are **very alike**

**- work on** يطور/يحسن      **- work with** يعمل مع

**Dr Magdy worked with top surgeons.**

**The thief stole my money.**

**14 - In the end** (السم) **-At the end of** ( لا يأتي بعدها اسم ولكن جملة ) في النهاية

## 15 - MAKE / DO

- نستخدم (make) عندما نتحدث عن تقديم أو بناء أو عمل شيء جديد.

## يعمل ترتيبات

## يُرْتَكَبُ خَطَا

## يعمل مكالمة

يسبب متاعب

یوعد

## يحق إنجازات

## یکسب مالاً

يجعله متاح ل

يشعل نار

يعوم بمجهود

يصادق

یہاں پر ایک اور

**- He's going to make a speech.**

**a**

- نستخدم (do) عندما نتحدث القيام بتنفيذ عمل أو مهمة أو نشاط ما.

يغسل الأطباء

**يقوم بوظيفة**

بفءءم الأءمال المنزلية

بقوم وعمال تجار و

بقوم يتلوا

یہ سب سے پہلے

## first Year

do a report  
do research  
do something  
do an experiment  
do shopping  
do washing  
do a crossword  
do an exam – a test

## Hello English

يعد تقرير  
يجري بحثا  
يقوم بعمل شيء  
يقوم بتجربه  
يقوم بالتسوق  
يقوم بالغسيل  
يقوم بحل الكلمات المتقاطعة  
يحل امتحان

## First Term

يقوم بعمل مسابقة  
يبدل قصارى جهده  
يعمل مشروع  
يقوم بالكوي  
يقوم بالطهي  
يقوم بغسل الملابس  
يقوم بنشاط  
يلعب جودو

- I always **do my homework.**

- We **did a class** survey today.

16 - **Share** يشارك

I share a room with my brother

- **Divide** ينقسم/يقسم

The class is divided into two groups.

17- **Let** + مفعول (مصدر بدون to)

- **Allow** + مفعول / مصدر ب to

- She let Oliver stay with her at her home .

- He allowed me to go out

18 - **Take** + مفعول + المصدر to

- It takes me an hour to finish my homework.

- **Spend** + مده + **V ing**

Ali spent two hours doing his homework.

18- يأتي بعد هذه الأفعال ( **see / hear/notice | watch** ) ( الفعل في المصدر لو حضرت من البداية

يأتي بعد هذه الأفعال ( **see / hear/ notice | watch** ) ( الفعل مضافاً له ing لو أتيت بعد بدايه الحدث )

- I saw my friends play football

- I heard her singing when I passed her house

19 - **arrive in** - يصل لمكان كبير

**arrive at**- يصل لمكان صغير

**At last they arrived** فعل لازم

- يصل ( أفقي - رأسي - معنوي ) ( reach )

- I reached ( **Cairo – the top – my goal** )

20 - **quiet** + هادي

**-quite**

إلى حد ما

**- quit**

( يهجر (يزوغ )

-The class is quiet

-The tree is quite tall .

- He has decided to quit smoking.

21- **He decided to leave the house.**

**-She decided on her goals.**

22- **make a mistake**- يرتكب خطأ

**He made a great mistake so he apologized.**

~~~~~

LISTENING

Charles Dickens

Today millions of people know Charles Dickens for the brilliant books that he wrote.

He was a great storyteller. But Dickens didn't only want to entertain people with his books, he also wanted to change their opinions about the world they lived in. He hoped his readers would then do something to make the world a better place.

Dickens was most interested in helping poor children because of his own difficult childhood.

When he was 12 years old, Charles' father was sent to prison. Like David Copperfield, he had to leave school and work to support his family instead. The Poor Law of 1834 removed support for most poor people so their lives were hard. When he wrote David Copperfield between 1849 and 1850, Dickens wanted to show us that not all poor people were bad. Like his father, Mr. Micawber went to prison because he had no money but after he left prison, he wanted to help David because he was a good man. In Dickens' books, people who worked hard were also often rewarded. For example, at the end of the book, David Copperfield becomes a successful writer.

Dickens also wanted to say that rich people needed to do something to help the poor. In David Copperfield, a man called Mr Wickfield helps David by giving him a room. Dickens thought that people like Mr Wickfield were honest and good and deserved to be rewarded. Other people in the book, on the other hand, were bad and he had unhappy end

~~~~~

Let's talk about how to write a great short story. It's important to plan your story. It should have four parts. At the start, we find out when and where the story is happening and we meet the main character. Don't spend too much time describing places and people- your characters need to do something from the start. In the second part of the story, the main character has a problem or something goes wrong. It's a good idea to have two or more problems. After that, the problem or problems are solved and everything is OK again. In this third part of the story, there should be a surprise for the reader. Finally, we find out what the characters do next, so, what happens to them when things are OK again.

## READING

### David Copperfield

'This is Mr Quinion, **David**,' **Mr Murdstone** said. 'You're going to **work for** him at **Murdstone and Grinby**, the bottle **merchants**, in **London**. You'll earn enough money to **pay for** your food, and I've **arranged** a place for you **to live**.' I was ten years old and I was going to go to work. And it was **hard work**. I went to a dirty old house near the river where **rats** lived under the floors. There my job was to wash **empty bottles** with three **other boys**, and I hated it. One morning, a **plump man** came to see me with **Mr Quinion**. 'Ah, Master **Copperfield**!' the man said 'This is **Mr Micawber**,' **Mr Quinion** told me. 'You will be living at his house.' And that evening, **Mr Micawber** took me home. His wife - a thin, **tired-looking** lady - was sitting with a baby. The baby was one of twins, and they had a boy of four and a girl of three. I soon discovered that **the Micawbers** were poor and that **Mr Micawber** **owed money to several people**. One morning the police came and took **Mr Micawber** away to prison **because of his debts**. I went to see him there the next Sunday. 'If a man earns twenty pounds a year and spends nineteen pounds, he'll be happy,' he said. 'But if he spends twenty pounds and a penny, he'll be **miserable**.'

@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@

### Summary of David Copperfield

- 1- **David Copperfield** **grew up** with his mother and his **stepfather**, **Mr Murdstone**.
- 2 - - Then **David's mother** died and **Mr Murdstone** took him to live with **Mr and Mrs Micawber**. **David** had to leave school and work in a factory. Then **Mr Micawber** went to prison and **David** had nowhere to live.
- 3- Without a home to live in, **David** visited **Aunt Betsey** and she took him to live with her friend, **Mr Wickfield**. A man called **Uriah Heep** also lived with **Mr Wickfield** and his daughter, **Agnes**, but **David** didn't **trust** him.
- 4- Some time later, **Uriah Heep** **played a trick on** **Aunt Betsey** and took her money and **David** worked hard to help her.
- 5 - When **David** found **Uriah Heep**, he admitted that he took **Aunt Betsey's** money and **David** made him give it back to her. Then **David** **went travelling** around Europe.
- 6- When **David** returned to England, he married **Agnes** and he became a successful writer.

@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@

### 1 Read the text message that Heba has sent to her friend, Amal. What does Heba want to do?

Hi Amal! Can you help me? I really want to do something to help other people in my **free time**, but I don't know what I can do. Do you have any suggestions for **voluntary work** I could do?

Heba



2- Read the text message that Heba has sent to her friend, Amal. What does Heba want to do?

Hi Heba! Good to hear from you! Why don't you **try visiting** old people in their homes? You could also **help children with their homework** at school. Just ask your teacher. And how about **looking after** the baby animals at Youssef's farm?

Amal

### Voluntary Work

**Tarek:**

**In my opinion** the Egyptian Food Bank (EFB) is making the world a better place because it helps people who haven't got enough money for food, and it teaches all of us to think more.

**Samir:**

**I have experienced** the work of Tomorrow's Dreamer Youth Association.

In my opinion, it shows young people that they can **make a difference**, and it teaches them about other **cultures and communities**. They are **doing a great job** by helping to educate a lot of young people.

**Maher:**

The Egyptian Red Crescent helps a lot of people every day. When there is a big **health problem**, we always see the doctors from **the Red Crescent** on TV. But they also work with communities to stop health problems from happening. One day, I want to do some **voluntary work** for them.

### Exercises on unit : 3 (Voc.)

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I am going to work.....a famous businessman in London.

a) on                      b) at                      c) in                      d) for

2. I should.....enough money to pay for my food.

a) gain                      b) win                      c) beat                      d) earn

3. I've.....a place for you to live.

a) arranged                      b) managed                      c) endangered                      d) earned

4. I went to a dirty old house where rats lived under the .....

a) flour                      b) flower                      c) floor                      d) fear

5. A woman - a thin, tired-..... lady was sitting with a baby.

a) looked                      b) looks                      c) look                      d) looking

6. The police took the man away to.....because of his debts.

a) the prison                      b) prison                      c) prisons                      d) a prison

7. The hero died.....the end of the story.

a) of                      b) at                      c) in                      d) with

8. He has failed the exam so he is .....

a) miserable                      b) happy                      c) pleased                      d) glad

9. It is a .....work. He doesn't get any money.

a) freelance                      b) paid                      c) voluntary                      d) debted

10 He went to prison because he the law.

a) followed                      b) made                      c) broke                      d) smashed

11.The prison is the place used for keeping .....

a) winners                      b) merchants                      c) traders                      d) criminals

12.The.....is the person who sells goods.

a) winner                      b) merchant                      c) trade                      d) criminal

13. How much did you.....for your new car?

a) cost                      b) pay                      c) owe                      d) receive

14. While going to Cairo, I felt something.....wrong with my car.

- a) done      b) went      c) got      d) made

15. He always.....tricks on his friends.

- a) plays      b) makes      c) does      d) give

16. We should try to improve our ..... with working hard. .

- a) lifes      b) leaves      c) loaves      d) lives

17. My neighbours are so kind and they had a boy.....four.

- a) with      b) for      c) of      d) to

18. I sent him a text .....to tell him about the time of the meeting..... .

- a) massage      b) message      c) massive      d) missels

19. He.....a good suggestion

- a) made      b) did      c) performed      d) gifted

20. Charles Dickens wrote great.....like, "Oliver Twist" and "David Copperfield".

- a) plays      b) novels      c) reports      d) poems

21. Thieves and criminals are sent to.....to have their punishment.

- a) the cinema      b) prison      c) the restaurant      d) school

22. People, who borrow a lot of money, have .....

- a) pains      b) mess      c) debts      d) spaces

23. A father has to work hard to.....enough money for his family.

- a) win      b) earn      c) reward      d) rob

24. I must be..... for my work so that I can support my family.

- a) earned      b) paid      c) believed      d) won

25. ....should be punished severely for the crimes they commit.

- a) Criminals      b) Caramel      c) Commuters      d) Cullers

26. ....the end. Oliver was adopted by Mr Brownlow and lived happily.

- a) At      b) Of      c) In      d)

27. The boy spent a lot of time.....cartoons on his mobile.

- a) watching      b) to watch      c) watch      d) watched

28. It is important for the writer to.....his story

- a) plan      b) planning      c) plane      d) plant

29. I really want to do something to help other people in my.....time.

- a) free      b) fare      c) fair      d) flee

30. Do you have any suggestion for.....work I can do?

- a) volunteer      b) voluntary      c) volume      d) vacuum

31. Since my uncle travelled abroad, I haven't heard.....him

- a) of      b) about      c) from      d) off

32. I appreciate the girls who help their mothers ..... their housework

- a) with      b) about      c) in      d) off

33. Physical exercise can ..... a big difference to our health.

- a) shake      b) make      c) take      d) bake

34. I'm going to work ..... a famous businessman soon.

- a) in      b) on      c) at      d) for

35. If you work hard, you'll earn enough money to pay your debts .....

- a) in      b) back      c) at      d) for

36. My pen friend is coming to Egypt. I've arranged a place for him .....

- a) live      b) lives      c) living      d) to live

37. At last, I found a job but it was hard .....

- a) career      b) profession      c) work      d) position

38. My job was ..... empty bottles with three other boys, and I hated it.

- a) to wash      b) washed      c) wash      d) to washing

39. He borrowed a lot of money and owed money ..... several people.

- a) to      b) for      c) of      d) from

40. We should.....less than we earn to live happily.

- a) find      b) spend      c) have      d) send

41. If we spend more than we earn, we 'll have debts and.....

- a) sadly      b) happy      c) miserable      d) penny

42. Some people work hard for several hours to ..... their living.  
a) gain                      b) win                      c) earn                      d) beat
43. Wait until you hear ..... the lawyer then make your decision.  
a) from                      b) of                      c) about                      d) at
44. I'm so happy with my new business because I have an honest .....  
a) parter                      b) porter                      c) partner                      d) part
45. After the preparatory school, you went to a ..... school.  
a) low                      b) primary                      c) first                      d) high
46. Last week, I had no money, but today I ..... some money from my family.  
a) sent                      b) lent                      c) received                      d) gave
47. When you ..... something new, you should ask others' advice.  
a) do                      b) make                      c) does                      d) makes
48. She is a talented dressmaker. She ..... clothes to famous ladies.  
a) do                      b) make                      c) does                      d) makes
49. She is pregnant and she is going to ..... a baby soon.  
a) give                      b) have                      c) find                      d) receive
50. The prison is the place where we ..... criminals.  
a) preserve                      b) keep                      c) reward                      d) ease
51. We were travelling fast, but suddenly something ..... wrong so we were late.  
a) went                      b) go                      c) goes                      d) do
52. He studied hard so he ..... all his exams.  
a) succeeded                      b) failed                      c) passed                      d) passed in
53. I'm so tired. Please, can yo take ..... home.  
a) I                      b) me                      c) mine                      d) my
54. We should be strict with those who ..... the law.  
a-truck                      b-tick                      c-trick                      d-stick
- 55- Poor Sara,She has a cold, she's got a pain in her arm and feels.....  
a) miser                      b) miserable                      c) misery                      d) comfort
- 56-Footballers often ..... a lot of money and also.....fame  
a) win                      b) gain                      c) work                      d) earn
- 57- You bought me my theatre ticket yesterday, so I ..... you some money  
a) owe                      b) own                      c) belong                      d) borrow
- 58- Hany was sent to ..... for attacking a man with a knife..  
a) palace                      b) paradise                      c) prison                      d) hotel
- 59- The farmer got a cat after he had a problem with .....  
a) bats                      b) cows                      c) ants                      d) rats
- 60- My baby sister never stops eating! She is ....., healthy and happy!  
a) bump                      b) plump                      c) dumb                      d) thumb
- 61-My brother played a ..... on me and made me go to school on Friday this week!  
a-truck                      b-tick                      c-trick                      d-stick
- 62- The market was full of ..... who were selling goods from all over the country.  
a-buyers                      b-miracles                      c-traitors                      d-merchants
- 63- Hazem and Imad have the same parents and the same birthdays. They are .....  
a. twins                      b. twice                      c. twine                      d. towers
- 64-Fire officers are still trying to..... the cause of the fire.  
a) invent                      b) find                      c) discover                      d) explore
- 65-If you drive too fast, you will break the..... The police might fine you.  
a- law                      b- promise                      c- record                      d- low
- 66-Their new advertising campaign has been very ..... They have sold a lot of goods.  
a) success                      b) failed                      c) successful                      d) failure
- 67-Ali is very good ..... languages  
a) by                      b) at                      c) on                      d) in
- 68- .....students got all their answers right in the test.  
a) sever                      b) severely                      c) several                      d) severe
- 69- When he wanted to pay for his things ,he ..... that his wallet was stolen.  
a) recognized                      b) made                      c) explored                      d) realised
- 70-This man has committed several crimes. He is a.....

- a-solider                      b-detective                      c-criminal                      d-officer
- 72-He was imprisoned although he didn't .....the crime.  
a) do                      b) make                      c) have                      d) take
- 73- The policeman asked the woman to .....the thief who stole her bag.  
a) find                      b) tell                      c) search                      d) describe
- 74-Most charities rely on ..... contributions from the public  
a) volunteer                      b) voluntary                      c) volume                      d) vacuum
- 75- Only the.....can take part in the Paralympics games.  
a) able                      b) disabled                      c) blind                      d) healthy
- 76-Some students like French. .... don't like it  
a) another                      b) other                      c) others                      d) the other
- 77-We can see the plays at the.....  
a) cinema                      b) factory                      c) bookshop                      d) theatre
- 78-I don't agree.....you on that point.  
a) to                      b) with                      c) on                      d) for
- 79-I don't know who is phoning. Can you .....?  
a) find                      b) guess                      c) reach                      d) remember
- 80- Our Society should look .....homeless children .  
a) at                      b) over                      c) after                      d) out
- 81-I saw him ..... a few minutes ago  
a) to leave                      b) to leaving                      c) leaving                      d) left
- 82-Unfortauntely, I .....the train to Luxor.  
a) caught                      b) stopped                      c) lost                      d) missed
- 83-They thought money would ..... all their problems.  
a) explain                      b) answer                      c) solve                      d) tell
84. He applied for..... as a tour guide in a tourist company.  
a. work                      b. a work                      c. career                      d. a job
85. Rodayna has a ..... brother and sister called Abdulrahman and Sam.  
a. twins                      b. twin                      c. pair                      d. pair
86. Your cruel words have ..... her feelings.  
a lived                      b. encouraged                      c. heard                      d.hurt
87. I ..... my sister a great deal. She has looked after me after my mother's death.  
a. own                      b. owe                      c. collect                      d. realise
88. Building the new house left him a million dollars in .....  
a. opinion                      b. opportunity                      c. debt                      d. difference
89. This has been out of water for quarter an hour. However it is still .....  
a. alive                      b. live                      c. living                      d. lives
- 90-. I like to help disabled children ..... their problems.  
a) at                      b) with                      c) by                      d) from

## 2- Choose the Two (2) correct answers out of the Five (5) options given:

1. You can't say she is fat. She is plump no more. " The word '**donated**' can be replaced by.....  
a. clumsy                      b. obese                      c. pump                      d. podgy                      e. stocky
2. "He admitted the mistake he'd made." The word '**admit**' in this sentence can be replaced by...  
a. denied                      b. concealed                      c confessed                      d. concede                      e.receive
3. Voluntary is to.....as miserable is to happy  
a. unpaid                      b. free                      c. expensive                      d. selfish                      e .compulsory
4. She looked miserable." '**Miserable**' here is antonymous with .....  
a .depressed                      b. happy                      c. contented                      d. poor                      e.helpless
5. "You shouldn't waste your time." In this sentence, the words '**not waste**' can be best replace by...  
a. rescue                      b. spend                      c. save                      d. waste                      e.keep
6. "This area is policed by the army". The verb "**policed**" here means.....  
a. disagreed                      b. controlled                      c. regulated                      d. lose                      e. waste
7. Craftsmen.....a lot of money as a lot of people need them.  
a. do                      b. make                      c. gain                      d. earn                      e. pay
- 8.I' d like to borrow your car to go to Cairo. The antonyms of **borrow** are.....  
a. dislike                      b. lend                      c. disorder                      d. organize                      e. return
- 9.People like their honest ones. The synonyms of **honest** are.....  
a. chubby                      b. sincere                      c. delicate                      d. dishonest                      e. trustful

[illegible]

## المضارع التام

**have / has + P.P. ....**

- ١- يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث تم في الماضي وأثره مازال موجود في الحاضر.

- 2- يستخدم المضارع التام للسؤال عن الخبرات السابقة دون تحديد وقت حدوثها عادة مع (ever) و (never)

- ٣- يعبر عن حدث تم في الماضي دون تحديد وقت حدوثه. وعند التحديد نستخدم ماضي بسيط:

- لاحظ الاختلاف الثانيه تم تحديد الزمن لذلك استخدمنا ماضي بسيط

- ٤- يدل المضارع التام على حدث متكرر ( عدد ما تم انجازه ) ( أى أن ذلك الحدث قابل للحدث مرة أخرى ) :

- لكن إذا استخدمنا الماضي البسيط مع حدث متكرر فمعنى ذلك أن الحدث توقف :**

- ٥- يستخدم إذا انتهت الجملة بكلمة **before** :

[illegible]

- يستخدم المضارع التام مع الكلمات الآتية:

**Just / already / yet / so far حتى الآن / ever / never / lately / recently**

/ **since** / **for** / **so far** / **up till now**

ملاحظات

- PP. لاحظ أن ever / never / just / already تأتي بين have / has والتصريف الثالث.**

- ♦ يمكن أن تأتي **already** في نهاية الجملة:

- ◆- نستخدم **already** في الأسئلة.

- ### الاختلاف بين ( already - just ) فى الجملة:

- Choose:** The plane has ( already – just ) flown . I can see it in the sky.



- يمكن استخدام (ever) في السؤال وفي الإثبات في الجمل التي تتضمن صفة درجة ثالثة أو رقم ترتيبي

- This is the most interesting film I've ever watched.**

لاحظ استخدام **ever** في السؤال و **never** في الإجابة :

- Have you **ever** travelled by plane? • No, I have **never** travelled by plane.

**such** تستخدم بثرة، ايضا قبل، صفة المقارنه وقبل

- I have **never** watched a **more interesting** film **than** this one.



- I have **never** met a taller boy than Ali.

- I have **never** watched **such an interesting film like** this one.

~~~~~

- تستخدم **yet** في نهاية الأسئلة لأن الحدث لم يتم و الجملة المنفية

- They **haven't eaten lunch yet**.

- Has he arrived **yet**?

وإذا تم الحدث نستخدم **already** وليس **yet** في نهاية السؤال

- Have you finished the test (yet – already)? – You are quick.

- Have you finished the test (yet – already)? – You should hurry.

- He came late, **yet** he attended the meeting.

ملحوظه **yet** بمعنى لكن او مع ذلك

~~~~~

- Has Salah scored goals **lately / recently**? السؤال ( **recently / lately** ) بنفس الطريقة في السؤال

في النفي ( **lately** ) في الإثبات و ( **recently** ) - يفضل استخدام

- She **has moved** to a new house **recently**. - He **hasn't phoned** me **lately**.

~~~~~

- نستخدم (**has / have been to**) بمعنى ذهب لمكان وعاد أما (**has / have gone to**) ذهب لمكان وما زال هناك (لم يعد)

- My sister **has gone** to school.

(She is still at school now.)

- My sister **has been** to the cinema.

(She isn't there now).

~~~~~

- يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي و ما زال مستمرا حتى الآن مع ( **since** ) و ( **for** )

- Mona **has studied** English **for** ten years. - We **have been** at this school **since** 2012.

- I **have lived** in Tanta **since** 1984

(= and I still do.)

- Susan **hasn't finished** her homework **yet**.

(= and she is still doing it.)

- يأتي بعد **since** نقطة زمنية تحدد بداية الحدث أما **for** يأتي بعدها مدة هذا الحدث.

| Since (+ بداية المدة )                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | For + مدة كاملة                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Last (week- month – year – Monday - night<br/>1995 / 5 o'clock / Sunday<br/>The /this morning –yesterday<br/>Lunch time – spring – then<br/>His arrival/ childhood/death-<br/>Marriage/ birthday<br/>I /He/she <u>was</u>..... / the age of.....<br/>Since the last + اسم<br/>since the last visit-the last holiday</p> | <p>a while –a moment-a second-a minute- an<br/>hour -a day- a night- a week – a month –<br/>a season- a year ( five days /ten years )<br/>a long time / ages ) / a decade / / ever<br/>–more than-some time<br/>مدة زمنية + the last/past<br/>the last week/month. For<br/>وتأتي مع كل ما ينتهي ب s و a/an</p> |

- We **have owned** this house **since** 1988 - He **has known** the same friends **for** 3 years.

- كما يأتي بعد **since** أيضا اسم يدل على وقت معلوم مثل

- lunch / lunchtime / his childhood / her wedding / their arrival.....

- She **has stayed** her since **her marriage**. - He **has known** the same friends **since** his childhood.

- I **haven't seen** him **since** he left for Cairo

- الجملة التي تأتي بعد **since** تكون زمن الماضي بسيط

- إذا كان التحويل من ( **for** ) إلى ( **since** ) صعب ( أي المدة لا يمكن تحويلها إلى نقطة زمنية ) نستخدم التركيبة التالية

**It ( is – has been ) since** ماضي بسيط

- He **hasn't travelled** **for** ages. ( **since** )

- It is ages **since** he travelled.

He **hasn't studied** **for** a long time. ( **since** )

- It is a long time **since** he studied.

- كما يستخدم المضارع التام إذا وجدنا الجملة ما يلي

- It's/This is the first (second...) time...

- It's the first time I have been to this place.

- It's (This) is the only...

- This is the only play I have seen.

- In the last few years / months.....

- Egypt **has changed** a lot **in the last few years**.

- In recent years - It **has not rained** in the Western Desert **in recent years**.  
 - Over the ages / over the years.... - The earth **has become** more crowded **over the ages**.

~~~~~

Have/has been +V- ing

المضارع التام المستمر من

ويعبر عن حدث بدأ واستمر حتى الآن

- **I've been studying** all day.
- **I've been running**. That's why I'm so tired.
 - **It's been raining** a lot recently
- **I've been learning** Greek for the last few months.

للتوضيح نتيجة موقف في الحاضر

ويعبر عن حدث استمر بشكل منتظم من الماضي الى الحاضر

ويستخدم المضارع التام المستمر غالباً مع:

All day / all week/ all afternoon/ all evening / for...now/for..not yet/ since / lately / recently / over the last few months

لاحظ استخدام المضارع التام فقط:

- My uncle **has joined** the army.

١- عندما لا يستغرق الفعل وقتاً طويلاً

- Mona **has sent** me **three e-mails**.

٢- عندما نذكر عدد المرات التي قمنا فيها بالحدث

٣- في حالة وجود أفعال الحواس و الشعور والادراك لا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة:

- **I've known** Yara since kindergarten.

~~~~~

## 2- مقارنة الماضي البسيط بالمضارع التام

شكرا كتاب Aspire

| Past Simple ماضي بسيط                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Present perfect مضارع تام                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1- Form :</b><br>التصريفي الثاني للفعل<br>- The government <b>built</b> a school in the village last year.<br>- Somebody <b>painted</b> this room yesterday.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | <b>1- Form :</b><br>have / has + p.p.<br>- Actors <b>have used</b> the hotel in many famous films.<br>- Somebody has planted some trees.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>2- Passive :</b> مجهول<br>was / were + pp<br>- A school <b>was built</b> in the village last year.<br>- This room <b>was painted</b> yesterday.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | <b>2- Passive :</b> مجهول<br>have / has +been + pp<br>- The hotel <b>has been used</b> in many famous films.<br>- Some trees <b>have been planted</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>3- Use</b> الاستخدام<br>الحدث في الماضي البسيط وقته محدد والفعل ليس له اثر -<br>- I left school three years ago<br>- She met her uncle while she was walking to school.<br>- <b>This week</b> , my uncle died.<br>- <b>Today</b> , I have drunk three cups of tea.<br>عاده في الماضي<br>- When I was young, I always played in the street.<br>حدث استمر لفترة ثم انتهى في الماضي و غير موجود الآن -<br>I <b>lived</b> abroad for ten years.<br>She <b>played</b> tennis when she was young. | <b>3- Use</b> الاستخدام<br>الحدث في المضارع التام وقته غير محدد والفعل ما زال له اثر<br>- I have read that book. (I can tell you about it now.)<br>- You have broken my CD player. (I can't use it now.)<br>- الحدث تم في الماضي في وقت محدد (الوقت المحدد لم ينتهي و تكرار الحدث (عدد مرات حدوثه)<br>- <b>Today</b> , I have drunk three cups of tea.<br>- الحدث تم منذ فترة بسيطة مع (just)<br>- I've just finished my final exams.<br>- الحدث بدأ في الماضي و ما زال مستمرا حتى الآن مع (since) و (for)<br>- I've lived in London since I was born.<br>- My father has worked as a vet for seven years. |

## 4- Key words :

الكلمات الدالة

Yesterday - years, weeks, months, days, hours  
ago; in (past year); last (month, week)

## 4- Key words :

الكلمات الدالة

just - yet - never - already - ever - so  
far - recently - since - for

## Mr El Sebaei Grammar exercises تمارين الوحدة الثالثة Mr El Sebaei

## Choose the correct answer:

- 1- Have you met the manager ( just - yet - ever - since ) ?
- 2- Dalia has practised her hobby ( since - for - yet - recently ) a long time.
- 3- Reham (visits - has visited - is visiting - visit ) London recently
- 4- They ( have been - have gone - had gone - gone ) to the USA. They are in Cairo now.
- 5- She ( has left - leaves - left - would leave ) for work already
- 6- Have you eaten all these bananas ( ever - never - already - since ) ? .
- 7- Samir and Nagy ( were - have gone - have been - had been ) friends all their lives.
- 8- I have known him ( since - when - for - ago ) we joined the university.
- 9- Noha has ( already - yet - never - ever ) cleaned her room. It looks nice now.
- 10- Adel has graduated from university ( for - since - in - until ) 2003.
- 11- We have lived in Cairo since we ( have married - married - get married - marry )
- 12- The manager has met many people ( when - on - after - since ) he arrived at his office.
- 13- It's five hours since she ( has come - come - coming - came ) back home.
- 14- He ( eats - has eaten - had eaten - is eating ) three sandwiches up till now
- 15- This tree ( grew - grows - will grow - has grown ) phenomenally tall over the years.
- 16- They ( lived - have lived - were living - live ) in Luxor since 2015.
- 17- I can't phone my parents because I ( lost - was losing - have lost - lose ) my phone.
- 18- Nawal hasn't studied the present ( already - yet - ago - recent )
- 19- The plane ( left - already left - just left - has just left ). I can see it in the sky!
- 20- My uncle has lived abroad ( for - already - yet - since ) five years ago .
- 21- Hala cannot play tennis because she ( hurt - had hurt - hurts - has hurt ) her hand
- 22- Basel is not hungry because he ( has eaten - eats - is eaten - ate ) a big lunch.
- 23- We can't go home by bus because the last bus ( left - has left - leaves - had left )
- 24- Hamid's hair is wet because he ( has - had had - has had - had ) a shower.
- 25- Radwa doesn't know what flying is like as she ( flies - never flew - has never flown - not flies ).
- 26- What have you ( ever - yet - since - never ) done that you would like to do?
- 27- How long have you studied English ( ago - just - since - for ) ?
- 28- ( For - Until - About - Since ) when have you lived in your home?
- 29- I have never eaten shrimps ( ever - by - before - after )
- 30- Where is your father? My father ( has been - has gone - had gone - had been ) to Cairo.
- 31- Help! I ( lose - lost - have lost - am losing ) my wallet. How can I get home?
- 32- Last night I ( lose - lost - have lost - am losing ) my keys and had to call my neighbor to let me in.
- 37- You look pale. ( Has anything happened - Will anything happen - had anything happened - Was anything happening ) to you ?
- 34- They ( learned - learn - have learned - had learned ) all the new words. They needn't worry about the test.
- 35- Many people ( grew - have grown - had grown - has grown ) up reading the books of Abdel-Tawab Youssef.
- 36- I ( have just finished - just finish - had just finished - were just finishing ) one of his books, called My Father, An Egyptian Teacher.
- 37- She ( had written - have written - wrote - has written ) a book about why the writer became so successful.
- 38- Since he ( has become - have become - became - become ) famous in Egypt, people have translated his books into many languages.
- 39- His books ( influence - influenced - has influenced - have influenced ) children for many years.
- 40- It's two weeks since we last ( met - have met - had met - has met ).

- 41- This is the most interesting book I have ( never - ever - yet - just ) read .
- 42- Oh! I ( lost - lose - am losing - have lost ) my passport. What should I do?
- 43- Tamer ( had - has had - has - is having ) a lot of health problems since he started living in that polluted city.
- 44- Adel ( hasn't contacted - didn't contact - doesn't contact - hadn't contacted ) me since he left Cairo.
- 45- I have never ( gone - been - seen - visited ) to the zoo before.
- 46- My cousin has lived abroad ( when - for - ago - since ) his childhood.
- 47- Belal is not here. He has ( gone - been - seen - visited ) to the dentist's.
- 48- Omar, ( has - have - did - had ) you read that book I recommended?
- 49- I ( hasn't - haven't - didn't - hadn't ) finished the book yet.
- 50- I started reading the story on Saturday but I have been busy ( since - for - ago yet ) then.
- 51- Shady has been very busy since he ( has begun - begin - began - begins ) working for that charity.
- 52- Nothing like this has ( never - lately - ever - just ) happened to me.
- 53- Have you ( ever tried - tried ever - never tried - tried never ) English food?
- 54- Many of today's great writers ( have also worked - also work - has also worked - also worked ) as teachers.
- 55- Charles Dickens is a famous English writer. He ( write - wrote - has written - is writing ) many books for children.
- 56- He started writing stories for children when he ( has been - have been - had been - was ) a primary school teacher.
- 57- Many of his most famous stories, ( have been made - be made - was made - made ) into successful films.
- 58- Ali ( isn't - didn't - wasn't - hasn't been ) hungry because he has eaten a big lunch.
- 59- My brother ( is going - will go - has gone - has been ) to Paris, he came back last week.
- 60- Since the computer was used in schools, remarkable progress in education ( has made - has been made - had made - had been made ).
- 61- My uncle ( is - will be - has been - is being ) to Germany lately.
- 62- We haven't seen him ( since - for - from - in ) over a year.
- 63- A long time has passed ( when - because - since - until ) I last saw him.
- 64- She has been to America. This means that she ( is still - is no longer - will be - won't be ) there.
- 65- Something is wrong with his car, so he ( has taken - took - was taken - is being taken ) it to the garage.
- 66- We ( haven't decided - didn't decide - hadn't decided - don't decide ) what to do for the holidays yet.
- 67- I ( have had - had - had had - was having ) my own computer for three years now.
- 68- Agatha Christie's books ( have been translated - were being translated - translated - have translated ) into more than 40 languages.
- 69- Ali ( is - has been - is being - had been ) at university for three years. He comes home every weekend.
- 70- Shakespeare ( has written - wrote - had written - was written ) 37 plays.
- 71- We moved to this house two years ago today. So we ( lived - live - has lived - have lived ) here for two years.
- 72- It is ages since we ( have read - had heard - heard - was hearing ) some good news.
- 73- You can't talk to Tarek because he ( used to go - had gone - has just gone - goes ) out.
- 74- ( For - In - At - Since ) he became famous, his books have been translated into many languages,
- 75- I haven't heard from my brother ( since - ago - just - for ) his travel.
- 76- We started to live here more than 20 years ( for - ago - since - so far ).
- 77- We have lived here ( for - ago - since - so far ) more than 20 years.
- 78- ( Do schools - Were schools - Had schools been - Have schools been ) wrong to teach everyone in the same way?
- 79- Have you ( never been - yet been - even been - ever been ) in a plane?
- 80- This is the first time we ( had been - have been - went - was going ) to a theatre.
- 81- He will welcome us as soon as we ( arrived - will arrive - arriving - have arrived ).

82. I started working here in 1998. This means.....

- a. I have started work here since 1998.      b. I haven't worked here since 1998.  
c. I have started working here since 1998.      d. I have worked here since 1998.

84- Ola has never flown before this time. This means .....

- a. It is the first time for Ola to fly      b. Ola has flown once before this time.  
c. we do not know if Ola has flown before or not.      d. Ola has flown before that time

85- I have never eaten such a delicious meal. I mean that .....

- a. I am not enjoying the meal I am eating      b. I am enjoying the meal I am eating  
c. the meal I am eating is not delicious  
d. the meal I am eating is not as delicious as meals I have eaten before

86- Nada is the kindest friend I have ever had. This means .....

- a. I have never known kind friends.      b. I have ever known kind friends.  
c. Nada is kinder than my other friends.      d. Nada is as kind as than my other friends.

87. He last had his eyes tested ten months ago. This means.....

- a. He had tested his eyes ten months ago.  
b. He had not tested his eyes for ten months then  
c. He hasn't had his eyes tested for ten months.  
d. He didn't have any test on his eyes in ten months.

88. No one has seen Linda since the day of the party. This means .....

- a. Linda has not been seen since the day of the party  
b. Linda is nowhere to be seen at the party  
c. The party is going on without Linda      d. No one has seen Linda for ages

89. I haven't got money, so I'm not going on holiday. This means .....

- a. Having no money made me go on holiday.  
b. Not having money on my holiday got me down  
c. If I have money, I'll go on holiday      d. If I had money, I would go on holiday

90- Nada is the cleverest girl I have ever known. This means .....

- a. Nada is as clever as some girls I have known before  
b. Nada is less clever than some girls I have known before  
c. Nada is cleverer than some girls I have known before  
d. Nada is cleverer than all girls I have known before

## Advanced Exercises

1- She is really a good friend and she ..... to send me a letter each month.

- a) never failed      b) never fails      c) is never failing      d) had never failed

2- Generally speaking, I ... film reviews because I like to be open-minded when I go to the cinema.

- a) am not reading      b) don't read      c) haven't read      d) haven't been reading

3- I ( had left-have left- was leaving-am leaving ) my books in the class. Could you go and fetch them for me?

4- It is more than 20 years ( for - since- while-on ) the writer wrote a short story.

5- I have ( yet-ever-all ready- recently ) sent him an e-mail; I expect him to send me a cheque soon.

6- I ( 've been making- 've made- 've been made- will make ) a cake. Would you like some?

7- Since his mother ( was-has been-is-had been ) ill, he will clean the flat for her.

8- ( For - Since- While- On ) I started my job, I've met a lot of important people.

9- Nageib Mahfouz's books.....into many languages.

- a) translated      b) were translated      c) have been translated      d) had been translated

10- It takes time to build ( assistance -residence -confidence -doubt ) when you learn a new skill.

11. One Thousand and One Nights ..... many times and on man continents.

- a. has told      b. has been told      c. told      d. was telling

12. What have you..... that you would like to do?

- a. done ever      b. ever done      c. never done      d. done never

13. How long have you studied English .....

- a. since      b. for      c. ago      d. yet

14.....have you lived in your home ?

- a. When      b. Since how long      c. For when      d. Since when

15. Do you know what time Nada ..... the office ?

- a. have left      b. had left      c. left      d. was left

16. Have you finished all the reports .....? You never let me down, Sama!

- a. already      b. recently      c. so far      d. yet



17. I'm starving..... I've eaten nothing for two days.

a. before b. since c. so d. when

18. ....When have you lived here ?

a. For b. With c. From d. Since

19. .... how long have you lived here ?

a. For b. With c. From d. Since

20. I've known tens of people since I .....here..

a. have been lived b. was lived c. have lived d. had lived

21- There has been a decrease in the number of applications since the report on environmental pollution.....in the newspaper.

a. has appeared b. was appeared c. appeared d. has been appeared

22- I have.....sent him an email I expect him to send me a cheque.

a. yet b. all ready c. recently d. ever

## Time for skills

### Choose the best translation

1- Teachers in Egypt suffer from low salaries compared to the great role they must play in the lives of our children.

- ١- عاني المعلمون في مصر من دنو رواتبهم ، بالمقارنة بالدور العظيم الذي يجب أن يلعبوه في حياة أبنائنا
- ٢- يعاني المعلمون في مصر من تدني رواتبهم ، بالمقارنة بالدور العظيم الذي يجب أن يلعبوه في حياة أبنائنا
- ٣- يعاني المعلمون في مصر من تدني رواتبهم ، بالمقارنة بالدور العظيم الذي يجب أن يلعبوه في حياة أبنائنا
- ٤- عاني المعلمون في مصر من دنو رواتبهم ، بالمقارنة بالدور العظيم الذي يحبوا أن يلعبوه في حياة أبنائنا

2-Making people happy is one of the values that create affection among them. It doesn't take much effort to put a smile on someone's face.

- أ- إسعاد الناس أحد القيم التي تخلق المودة بينهم. لن تحتاج إلى جهد كبير لرسم ابتسامة على وجه شخص ما
- ب- إسعاد الناس أحد القيم التي تخلق الراحة بينهم. لن تحتاج إلى جهد كبير لرسم ابتسامة على وجه شخص ما
- ج- إسعاد الناس أحد القيم التي تخلق المودة بينهم. لن تحتاج إلى جهد كبير لطلب ابتسامة من وجه شخص ما
- د- إسعاد الناس أحد القيم التي تخلق الراحة بينهم. فستحتاج إلى جهد كبير لرسم ابتسامة على وجه شخص ما

3- The world is facing a lot of serious issues that affect people greatly. Getting rid of famine is one of the most important problems nowadays.

- A. تواجه الدول الكثير من القضايا الخطيرة التي تؤثر على الناس بشكل كبير. فالتخلص من الحروب من أهم مشاكل هذه الأيام.
- B. يواجه العالم الكثير من القضايا الخطيرة التي تؤثر على الناس بشكل كبير. فالتخلص من المجاعة من أهم مشاكل هذه الأيام.
- C. يواجه العالم الكثير من القضايا الجديدة التي تؤثر على الناس بشكل كبير. فالتخلص من المجاعة من أهم مشاكل هذه الأيام.
- D. يواجه العالم الكثير من القضايا الخطيرة التي تؤثر على السلام بشكل كبير. فالتخلص من المجاعة من أهم مشاكل هذه الأيام.

### ٤- حصلت مدينة الأقصر على المركز الأول على مستوى الجمهورية كمدينة صديقة للبيئة .

- a. The city of Luxor ranked first at the level of the countryside as an environment friendly governorate.
- b. The country of Luxor ranked first at the level of the republic as an environmentally friend governorate.
- c. The city of Luxor ranked first at the level of the republic as environmentally friendly village.
- d. The city of Luxor ranked first at the level of the republic as an environmentally friendly city.

### ٥- الماء أصل الحياة لذا يجب أن نحافظ على كل قطرة ماء . فلا تفسد البيئة بتلوث مياه النيل

- 1) Life is the source of water. We should save every drop of it; so don't spoil the environment by polluting the water of the Nile.
- 2) Water is the origin of life. We should keep water and protect the environment by not polluting the water of Nile.
- 3) Water is the source of life. We must keep every drop of it; so we should protect environment by not polluting the water of the Nile.
- 4) Water is the origin of life. We should keep every drop of it; so don't spoil the environment by polluting the water of the Nile.

### ٦- إن مشكله السكان هي اخطر مشكله تواجه بلدنا في هذا الوقت

1. The population problem are the most serious problem facing our country at this time.
2. The pulsations problem is the most serious problem facing our country at this time.
3. The population problem is the most serious problem facing our country at this time.
4. The pollution problem is the most serious problem facing our country at this time.

# Test Unit three

1- Choose the Two (2) correct answers out of the Five (5) options given:

1.The thief admitted killing the young lady. The synonyms of admit are.....

a. trust      b. confess      c. deny      d. acknowledge      e.doubt

2. I haven't seen any thing unusual. The antonyms of unusual are.....

a. common      b.essential      c. unwilling      d. conventional      e. unfortunate

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1-Nora looked.....when her husband died last year.

a) miserable      b) death      c) empty      d) hard

2- The judge assured that the directors had.....the law and sent them to prison.

a) supported      b) broken      c) gone      d) issued

3- He had enough money to pay off his father's.....

a) money      b) jobs      c) debts      d) doubts

4- After my business failed, I.....a lot of money to the bank.

a) owed      b) owned      c) arranged      d) borrowed

5-Hany was sent to ..... for attacking a man with a knife..

a) palace      b) factory      c) prison      d) hotel

6- You are allowed to.....six books from the library at a time.

a) lend      b) owe      c) borrow      d) earn

7-The officers are still trying to.....the cause of the fire.

a) expend      b) explore      c) invent      d) discover

8-Everyone.....Momen Zakaria because of his serious disease.

a) supports      b) lets      c) allows      d) gives

9-Hany has gone on holiday .....the last two weeks.

a) on      b) for      c) when      d) since

10-There.....a lot of changes in the world lately.

a) are      b) were      c) had been      d) have been

11-She .....for work an hour ago.

a) has left      b) left      c) is leaving      d) will leave

12-He last went on holiday.....he was still a boy.

a) after      b) for      c) when      d) since

13-Have you see the match? Yes, I .....it yesterday.

a) see      b) have seen      c) would see      d) saw

14-I think that Kamal is the most inspiring teacher I have.....known.

a) ever      b) never      c) recently      d) just

Read the following passage then answer the questions:

A good education is a system that makes student better. A good education increases children's creativity, helps them enjoy studying and helps them in their future career. Finland which is a European country is believed by many to have the best education system in the world, despite the fact that Finnish spend little money on education and have an average of nearly 30 students per class. What makes their schools good ?

They consider education itself to be the most important goal than a way to get a well-paid job.

Learning is valued and teachers are respected. In fact, teaching is the number one favourite profession among Finnish teenagers. In a world where so many people want jobs with status, the Finnish example is quite different .

Teachers in Finland are paid no more than their colleagues in other European countries, but they enjoy great job satisfaction. The main reason for this is the freedom they have to teach the material in any way they wish . Finnish students are pretty and happy too. There are no standardized national tests, which means they're not under the pressure as other European students to get highest marks they can in all-important end-of-year exams.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (7 marks)

1 - There are.....hundred students in each class in Finland.

a - more than a third      b - less than a third      c - exactly a third      d - half a third

2 - The underlined word "They" refers to .....

a- students      b- Finland      c- teachers      d- Finnish

3- Finland doesn't spend.....money on education .

a- much      b- any      c- little      d - less

## 4 - The Finnish..... learning .

a- ignore                      b- insult                      c - appreciate                      d- neglect

## 5 - We can find the best education system in the world in.....

a- Africa                      b- Europe                      c- Finnish                      d- Asia

## 6 - There is only a .....exam in Finland's education system

a- yearly                      b- monthly                      c- weekly                      d - daily

## 8 - The writer in the passage may be a .....

a- conductor                      b- researcher                      c- student                      d- coach

## choose the best translation:

طموحي في المستقبل أن أعمل في مجال السياحة لكي أمارس التحدث باللغة الانجليزية

1- My ambition in the future is to work in the field of terrorism to practise speaking English.

2-My goal in the future is to work in the field of tourism to practise speaking English.

3-My ambition in the future is to work in the field of tourism to practise speaking English.

4-My goal in the future is to work in the field of tourism to practise spoken English.

## choose the best translation:

1- We should know that we cannot change our country in just one day or can eradicate the wrong things alone as this needs efforts of all the citizens of the country.

١- يجب أن نعلم أنه لا يمكننا تغيير مدنا في يوم واحد فقط أو يمكن القضاء على الأمور الخاطئة بمفردنا لأن هذا يحتاج إلى جهود جميع مواطني البلد.

٢- يجب أن نعلم أنه لا يمكننا تغيير بلدنا في يوم واحد فقط أو يمكن القضاء على الأمور الصحيحة بمفردنا لأن هذا يحتاج إلى جهود جميع مواطني البلد.

٣- يجب أن نعلم أنه لا يمكننا تغيير بلدنا في عام واحد فقط أو يمكن القضاء على الأمور الخاطئة بمفردنا لأن هذا يحتاج إلى جهود جميع مواطني البلد.

٤- يجب أن نعلم أنه لا يمكننا تغيير بلدنا في يوم واحد فقط أو يمكن القضاء على الأمور الخاطئة بمفردنا لأن هذا يحتاج إلى جهود جميع مواطني البلد.

## 5) Write an essay of about 150 words on one only of the following topics:

How to choose a true friend

## Revision 1

## Units 1, 2, 3

## Reading

Raneem El Weleily

Raneem El Weleily is one of Egypt's most famous faces. She was world champion of the squash World Open in 2017, when she beat another Egyptian, Nour El Sherbini. She also twice reached the final in 2014 and 2016 and was the world's top women squash player in 2019. Raneem was born in Alexandria in 1989. She first played for Egypt's squash team when she was only ten. She became World Junior Champion in both 2005 and 2007 before winning her first competition as an adult in 2009. She is now married to another top squash player, Tarek Momen. When she is not playing squash, she likes to listen to music and do puzzles, but it is her success at squash that has inspired many young Egyptians to play the game.

## Mohamed Elneny

Mohamed Elneny is a famous Egyptian footballer. He is a strong player, and he has played for the Egyptian national team more than 60 times. He has scored more than six times for Egypt, and he is often on television. Elneny was born in 1992 and moved from his boyhood club Al Ahly, in Cairo, to Al-Mokawlon in Nasr City in 2010. He played for Al-Mokawlon at the same time as Mohamed Salah, and the two footballers became good friends. In 2013, Elneny went to Switzerland and joined Basel, one year after Salah went to the same club. Then Elneny went to London, England to join Arsenal. He is still good friends with Salah. 'I'm happy to have been with him since the beginning and he has not changed,' he says.

## Listening

**Presenter:** *Many people want to work with animals or to help the environment. A good way to get experience of this kind of work is as a volunteer. This means working without money, sometimes in another country, and it can be very hard work, but most young people love the experience. We spoke to three young student volunteers to find out what they did during their summer holidays last year.*

**Adam :** *Hi, my name's Adam. I spent the summer working with an organization based on the Red Sea coast in Egypt. It's a beautiful place and many people go there for a holiday. Most tourists like to go diving to see the colourful fish. However, there are so many tourists know that some of the fish are finding life difficult. My job was to help monitor the impact tourists are having. So, while the tourists were at the beach, or swimming in the sea, I was on a boat counting and monitoring marine life in different areas. It's important to know where the fish are and how many there are of them. Then, at the end of the day, while the tourists were eating in restaurants, I was with a team helping to clean the beaches. It was hard work, but I really enjoyed it. I'm sure my work has helped people to understand the impact tourists have on the Red Sea.*

**Lara :** *My name's Lara and I've recently returned from Greece. I spent most of my time on a quiet beach watching big turtles! These beautiful animals visit the same beach every year to lay their eggs. They lay a lot of eggs, but many of the eggs are taken by birds, or flooded by the rain and the sea. These turtles are endangered, so each one of their eggs is important. It was my job to help protect the eggs and stop tourists visiting the areas where the eggs lie in the sand. It can be a bit of a disaster when tourists visit and put sun umbrellas in the same place as the turtle eggs! The work was very tiring because we often worked at night. So when my friends were sleeping, I was there on the beach! But it was a great place and I love observing the big, slow turtles when they left the beach and slowly swam off into the sea. In my opinion, it's a great project and I've learned a lot more about conservation, too.*

**Munir :** *I'm Munir and I've just spent an amazing few weeks in the north of Thailand. It's a very isolated area and I had to take an internal flight to get there. Thailand is known for its elephants, and many farmers use them on their farms. The elephants are also used to carry tourists. Not all the elephants have an easy life, so I worked with conservationists who were trying to help elephants return to a more natural life in the wild. The elephants are very intelligent and it was amazing helping to feed them. It was not easy work, though. The rainforest was very hot, and there were a lot of dangerous snakes and insects. On one day, a spider bit me on the hand when I was putting something in my pocket. My hand swelled up and I thought, Oh, no! I have a big problem! But local people told me that the spider wasn't a dangerous one, and after a day or two my hand was fine. I don't think everyone would find life in Thailand easy, but I loved it. I've even learnt some Thai. Now I can communicate with Thai people as well as the elephants.*

# Unit FOUR

## Vocabulary

### Making new friends

عمل اصدقاء جدد

By: Mr El Sebael Atteya

|                            |                |                     |                         |                      |                |
|----------------------------|----------------|---------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|----------------|
| <b>advice</b>              | نصيحه          | <b>break-time</b>   | وقت راحه                | <b>disagree</b>      | لا يوافق       |
| <b>noticeboard</b>         | لوحة ارشادات   | <b>cool</b>         | لطيف                    | <b>difference</b>    | اختلاف         |
| <b>connection</b>          | صله - علاقه    | <b>a pair of</b>    | زوج من                  | <b>experience</b>    | خبره           |
| <b>bullying</b>            | بلطجه          | <b>relax</b>        | يسترخي                  | <b>between</b>       | بين            |
| <b>a bully</b>             | بلطجي          | <b>difficult</b>    | صعب                     | <b>positive</b>      | ايجابي         |
| take something for granted | امرا مسلم به   | <b>library</b>      | مكتبه                   | <b>negative</b>      | سلبي           |
| <b>teenager</b>            | مراهق          | <b>ask for</b>      | يطلب                    | <b>pros</b>          | مميزات         |
| <b>make friends</b>        | يصادق          | <b>singular</b>     | مفرد                    | <b>cons</b>          | عيوب           |
| <b>the best way</b>        | احسن طريقه     | <b>plural</b>       | جمع                     | <b>effect</b>        | تأثير          |
| <b>paper</b>               | ورق            | <b>borrow</b>       | يستعير                  | <b>miss</b>          | يفقد - يفقد    |
| <b>clothes</b>             | ملابس          | <b>include</b>      | يشتمل علي               | <b>pupils</b>        | تلاميذ         |
| <b>stressed</b>            | متوتر          | <b>called</b>       | يسمي                    | <b>nurse</b>         | ممرضه - يمرض   |
| <b>personal</b>            | شخصي           | <b>neighbour</b>    | جار                     | <b>nursing</b>       | تمريض          |
| <b>conversation</b>        | محادثة         | <b>explain</b>      | يشرح - يفسر             | <b>class</b>         | فصل - درجه     |
| <b>favourite</b>           | مفضل           | <b>students</b>     | تلاميذ                  | <b>mess</b>          | فوضى           |
| <b>everyone</b>            | كل واحد        | <b>idea</b>         | فكره                    | <b>part</b>          | جزء            |
| <b>join</b>                | ينضم الي       | <b>face</b>         | يواجه وجه               | <b>adverts</b>       | اعلانات        |
| <b>club</b>                | نادي           | <b>stressful</b>    | مجهد                    | <b>high grades</b>   | درجات عاليه    |
| <b>happen</b>              | يحدث           | <b>agree</b>        | يوافق                   | <b>team sports</b>   | رياضه جماعيه   |
| <b>teammate</b>            | زميل في الفريق | <b>jacket</b>       | جاكيت                   | <b>tips</b>          | نصائح          |
| <b>friendship</b>          | الصدافه        | <b>rucksack</b>     | حقيبه ظهر               | <b>physical</b>      | بدني           |
| <b>forget</b>              | ينسي           | <b>scared</b>       | خائف                    | <b>fight bullies</b> | يقاوم البلطجيه |
| <b>remember</b>            | يتذكر          | <b>nasty</b>        | كريه                    | <b>address</b>       | عنوان          |
| <b>get to</b>              | يصل الي        | <b>fight</b>        | قتال - يقاتل            | <b>affairs</b>       | شئون           |
| <b>cheat</b>               | يغش - غشاش     | <b>connect</b>      | يصل - يربط              | <b>individual</b>    | فردى           |
| <b>useful</b>              | مفيد           | <b>show</b>         | يبين - يعرض             | <b>police</b>        | البوليس        |
| <b>magazine</b>            | مجله           | <b>parents</b>      | الوالدين                | <b>policing</b>      | فرض الامن      |
| <b>article</b>             | مقاله - اداه   | <b>list</b>         | قائمه                   | <b>circle</b>        | دائره          |
| <b>page</b>                | صفحه           | <b>concern</b>      | يخص - اهتمام            | <b>closing</b>       | غلق            |
| <b>diversity</b>           | التنوع         | <b>debate</b>       | مناظره                  | <b>expressions</b>   | تعبيرات        |
| <b>optional</b>            | اختياري        | <b>populate</b>     | يسكن                    | <b>population</b>    | السكان         |
| <b>recipient</b>           | المستلم        | <b>salutation</b>   | تحيه                    | <b>pronunciation</b> | النطق          |
| <b>fortunately</b>         | لحسن الحظ      | <b>friendship</b>   | الصدافه                 | <b>highlight</b>     | اهم حدث        |
| <b>host</b>                | المضيف         | <b>social media</b> | وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى | <b>project</b>       | مشروع          |
| <b>copy</b>                | ينسخ - نسخه    | <b>marks</b>        | علامات                  |                      |                |

### Definitions

|                            |                                                                             |              |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| <b>advice</b>              | An opinion someone gives to help you                                        | نصيحه        |
| take something for granted | To think something is true or will stay the same.                           | من المسلم به |
| <b>noticeboard</b>         | A thing on a wall that people put information on                            | لوحة اعلانات |
| <b>connection</b>          | Something that brings people together                                       | علاقه - صله  |
| <b>bullying</b>            | The use their strength to frighten weaker people                            | بلطجه        |
| <b>a bully</b>             | A person who uses their strength or power to frighten or hurt weaker people | بلطجي        |
| <b>teenager</b>            | A person aged between 13 and 19 years                                       | مراهق        |
| <b>phone-in</b>            | A radio programme in which people phone an expert to                        | برنامج اذاعي |



|               |                                                                                                                                  |              |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
|               | <b>talk about a topic or problem.</b>                                                                                            |              |
| <b>cheat</b>  | To act in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage, especially in age, a competition, an exam.                              | يغش - غشاش   |
| <b>nurse</b>  | To look after someone who is ill.                                                                                                | ممرضة - يمرض |
| <b>police</b> | To keep control over an area to make sure that laws are obeyed and that people and property are protected, using a police force. | يحفظ الامن   |

## Expressions

|                            |                    |                                |                            |
|----------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>good at</b>             | جيد في             | <b>nursing people</b>          | تمريض الناس                |
| <b>join a club</b>         | ينضم لنادي         | <b>have a class vote to</b>    | جرى اقتراح داخل الفصل      |
| <b>do sports</b>           | يمارس رياضة        | <b>scared of</b>               | خائف من                    |
| <b>address... by title</b> | يخاطب باللقب       | <b>different to/from</b>       | مختلف عن                   |
| <b>address... by name</b>  | يخاطب بالاسم       | <b>instead of</b>              | بدلاً من                   |
| <b>ask about</b>           | يسأل عن            | <b>as far as I'm concerned</b> | فيما يتعلق بي              |
| <b>reply to</b>            | إجابة - رد         | <b>go online</b>               | متصل بالنت                 |
| <b>angry with</b>          | غضبان مع           | <b>cheating in exam</b>        | يغش في الامتحان            |
| <b>revise for exams</b>    | يراجع للامتحان     | <b>focus on</b>                | يركز علي                   |
| <b>take turns</b>          | يتناوب             | <b>a piece of advice</b>       | نصيحة                      |
| <b>move to a new town</b>  | ينتقل لمدينة جديدة | <b>reason for</b>              | سبب ل                      |
| <b>feel connected to</b>   | يشعر بأنه متصل     | <b>read aloud</b>              | يقرأ بصوت عالي             |
| <b>connect with others</b> | يتواصل             | <b>add to your list</b>        | يضيف للقائمة               |
| <b>be busy + v-ing</b>     | مشغول              | <b>a 15-year-old boy</b>       | ولد ذو ١٥ سنة              |
| <b>come out</b>            | يصدر               | <b>I've taken to it</b>        | لقد تعودت عليها            |
| <b>give advice on</b>      | ينصح               | <b>on social media</b>         | لي وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي |
| <b>get to new people</b>   | يصل لأشخاص جدد     | <b>find out about ...</b>      | يكتشف عن                   |
| <b>a way to follow</b>     | طريقه لاتباعها     | <b>respect of diversity</b>    | يحترم التنوع               |
| <b>a way of doing ...</b>  | طريقه لعمل         | <b>point to - at - towards</b> | يشير الي                   |

## Derivatives

| Verb           | Noun                      | adjective                   |
|----------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>connect</b> | <b>connection</b>         | <b>connected</b> connected  |
| <b>advise</b>  | <b>advice - advisor</b>   | <b>advisable</b> advisable  |
| <b>vote</b>    | <b>vote - voter</b>       | .....                       |
| <b>bully</b>   | <b>a bully - bullying</b> | .....                       |
| <b>stress</b>  | <b>stress</b>             | <b>stressed - stressful</b> |

## Synonyms @ Antonyms

| Word              | Synonyms                      | Antonyms                               |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <b>bully</b>      | oppressor - tyrant            | <b>helper</b>                          |
| <b>bully</b>      | oppress - torment - tyrannize | <b>aid - please - delight</b>          |
| <b>advice</b>     | guidance - counsel            | <b>deceit - falsehood</b>              |
| <b>friendship</b> | amity - companionship         | <b>hate - enemyship</b> كراهية - عداوة |
| <b>connect</b>    | associate - link              | <b>detach - divide - disjoin</b>       |
| <b>connection</b> | link - relationship           | <b>gap - disunion</b>                  |
| <b>pros</b>       | <b>advantage - merits</b>     | <b>disadvantage - demerits</b>         |
| <b>positive</b>   |                               | <b>negative</b>                        |

## 1- personal ( شخصي )

## -personnel ( شئون العاملين )

2 - affect يؤثر علي

- have an effect on له تأثير علي

- effective مؤثر

Influence

- have an influence on له تأثير علي

- influential مؤثر

Impact

- have an impact on له تأثير علي

## Test yourself:

1. Egypt has a great ( affection- effect- affect ) among the countries of the Middle East.
2. My family is very ( influence- affection- influential ) in the world of banks.
3. Parents should have good ( influence- affection- influential ) on their children.

2 - لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد مع الكلمات الآتية ولكن عند الإشارة إليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير جمع (they, them, their):

Everyone / everybody / someone / somebody / no one / nobody / anyone / any body / (any / every person)

-Everyone benefits from space technology in their everyday lives.

-Everyone has their own ideas about the best way to bring up children.

Someone is knocking on the door, aren't they?

3- Sports ( n ) ( adj ) رياضي - رياضات - ( sporty ) صفة تأتي قبل للاسم

- Sportsman ( رجل رياضي )

Do - play sports

I should play ( do ) sports to get fit.

It's the school sports day on Monday.

Do you belong to a sports club?

He'll be remembered both as a brilliant footballer and as a true sportsman.

We are a very sporty family.

4- experience تجربه (غير معدودة) experience تجربه معمل experiment تجربه معمل

-They offered me the job because I had a lot of experience

-I had a lot of interesting experiences during my year in Africa..

-In labs, scientists do a lot of experiments.

- If you suffer from burnout, you will experience a lot of stress.

- people experiencing burnout feel like they can't live their lives normally

## Test yourself:

1. Scientists need to do a lot of (experiences- experiments-experience ) to prove their theories.
2. A lot of youth don't have the necessary (experiences- experiments-experience ) to get a good job.
3. When our youth join our army, they (experiences- experiments-experience ) a new different life.

5 - suggest / recommend + V + ing = suggest / recommend that + فاعل + should + مصدر

-He suggested spending the holiday in Hurghada.

-He suggested that they should spend the holiday in Hurghada.

6 . Busy + verb+ing - I am busy doing my homework

8 - الأرقام الآتية لا تجمع إذا كانت مسبقة بعدد بدون عدد

hundred , thousand , million , billion

- Millions of people use the Cairo Metro every day.

- About three million people use the Cairo Metro every day.

## 7- Verbs and Nouns

| catch         |  |                  |                 |
|---------------|--|------------------|-----------------|
| catch a ball  |  | catch a criminal | يقبض على المجرم |
| catch a bus   |  | catch a disease  | يصاب بمرض       |
| catch a train |  | catch cold       | يصاب بالبرد     |

|                 |                     |               |                  |
|-----------------|---------------------|---------------|------------------|
| catch a flight  | يلحق بالرحلة الجوية | catch flu     | يصاب بالإنفلونزا |
| lose            |                     |               |                  |
| lose a ball     | يضيع الكرة. هدف     | lose a race   | يخسر السباق      |
| lose a criminal |                     | lose weight   |                  |
| lose a match    | يضيع مباراة         | lose appetite |                  |
| miss            |                     |               |                  |
| miss a ball     |                     | miss a match  | تفوته المباراة   |
| miss a bus      | يفوته التوبيس       | miss a train  | يفوته القطار     |
| miss a flight   | تفوته الرحلة        | miss a person | يفوته شخص        |

### Listening

**Radio show host :** Good evening everyone. Welcome to the show. Tonight, **we're talking** about **bullying. Unfortunately**, a lot of **teenagers are bullied** at school, and this can have some very **negative effects on** them. **We're going to talk** to a 15-year-old boy called Ali, **who is being bullied**. Ali.....are you **on the line?**

**Ali :** Hi, Seleem. How are you?

**Radio show host :** I'm well, thank you. How are you this evening?

**Ali :** I'm OK, but last week was really hard. Two boys in my class are bullying me because I am not very good at football. I like to play chess more than football. Last week they hid my rucksack. It had all my school books in it. I hate going to school now.

**Radio show host :** Oh, no! That's terrible. Did you **tell a teacher?**

**Ali :** No, I didn't. I was **too scared**. I've just moved to this town, so I don't know the teachers very well.

**Radio show host :** Well, Ali, I really think you should **talk to a teacher**. Your teacher can talk to **the bullies** and make it clear that they shouldn't **behave** like this. **If you do nothing, the bullying will just continue.**

**Ali :** Yes, ....you're right...There's one teacher that I **get along well** with. I'll talk to him.

@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@

### Listening (2)

**Ola :** So, do you think moving to a new school in another town is a good thing or a bad thing for **teenagers?**

**Lina :** **As far as I'm concerned**, It's not a good idea. If you move to a new school, you have to leave your old friends behind and it's really difficult to **make new friends**.

**Ola :** I'm not so sure about that. I think you can make new friends if you're nice to other people and start conversations with them. For example, I'm sure you would make lots of new friends!

**Lina :** That's true. It is possible to make new friends, but it takes time. You'll be really **lonely** for the first few months.

**Ola :** **In my opinion**, it's **a good experience** to have because it makes you stronger. **Lina :** I know that it can make people stronger, but I **would prefer to** just stay with the people I know.

@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@

**To : problems@teen\_magazine.com**

**Subject : Help! I don't have any friends at my new school.**

**Dear Aunt Carol,**

I think it is difficult to **make friends**. I don't have any friends at my new school. I am

always **on my own at break-time**. Yesterday, I **talked to a girl** in my class. I asked her if she wanted to **do some homework** with me but she said no. I need some advice about how to make friends. Do you have any advice for me?

@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@

To : **problems@teen\_magazine.com**

Subject : **Help! I'm really**

**stressed! Dear Aunt Carol,**

I always work very hard at school, but I'm **really stressed** about some exams I have next week. The first two exams are 3 hours long and will be very difficult. The last exam is in a subject I'm not very **good at**. I've **spent a lot of time in the library this week**, but that hasn't helped me feel better. I need some advice about how to relax. Please.

@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@

### **New in Town**

It's day one at a new school in a new town. You've got all the paper and pens you need. You're **wearing cool new clothes**. But you don't know anyone and you're not sure where to go. **Starting at a new school** feels so hard because you don't have any friends there to help you. It's very easy to **feel stressed**, but life will get easier. Here's some advice to help you. Don't **take it for granted** that other students will start a conversation. Ask other people questions about themselves. **Everyone likes talking about themselves**. **Try asking** them about their favourite subjects or which sports they like and don't ask too many **personal questions**. You can only make friends if you spend time with them! The best way to do this is to join clubs or do **team sports** you like. **Go online or look at the noticeboard** at your school and find out what's happening. If you're **part of a team**, your **teammates** will feel **connected to** you and that connection could become **a friendship**. While you're **busy talking** to other students, don't **forget to study**. **Remember to do your homework** so you don't have any problems with your teachers. Those teachers can also give you some advice on how to make friends and enjoy life in your new town. Talk to them too.

@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@

@@@ Hassan is a good friend. Last week, however, he **borrowed** my phone **without asking**. Then he dropped the phone. **Fortunately**, the phone did not break but I was very **angry with** him. Now he's not talking to me. (**Maged**)

@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@

Fawzi always gets **good marks** at school, but he is not always a good student. He often **tries to make us all laugh**. Last week, he was talking in a lesson and the teacher was angry with him. He had to leave the classroom. Now he doesn't want to make us laugh any more. (**Omar**)

@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@

There is a girl in my class and she always says **unkind things** about me. My friend tells me that she is also saying things about me **on social media**. Last week, she took a photo of me **without asking**. Today she was **pointing at me** and laughing with her friends. It makes me feel very unhappy. (**Huda**)

### **Exercises on unit : 4 (Voc.)**

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1- What can teenagers do to ..... friends in a new town?

a - make                      b - do                      c - give                      d - stay

2- "Advice" is the synonym of .....

a - advisor                      b - tips                      c - bits                      d - tapes

3- She seemed to take it for ..... that I would go with her to New York.

a - talented                      b - gifted                      c - granted                      d - life

4- You should ask for your teacher's ..... on how to prepare for the exam

- a - advise      b - advises      c - advisor      d - advice
- 5- If you need more information about the trip , look at the ..... on the wall.
- a - noticeboard      b - fence      c - noticeable      d - broad
- 6- Scientists have established a .... between cholesterol levels and heart disease.
- a - school      b - tie      c - connection      d - control
- 7- I have finished reading an / a ..... about the accident in Al-Ahram .
- a - book      b - notebook      c - tackle      d - article
- 8- I am old-fashioned .I am still using a pencil and ..... for writing
- a - paper      b - a paper      c - newspaper      d - magazine
- 9- A ..... is the person between 13 and 19 years old.
- a - baby      b - kid      c - teenager      d - child
- 10- Youth like wearing ..... new clothes.
- a - cold      b - calm      c - coal      d - cool
- 11- It is not easy for the government ..... the accurate population.
- a - know      b - knowing      c - to know      d - knew
- 12- it is very easy to feel ..... in a new place if you don't have friends there.
- a - stressed      b - happy      c - pleased      d - glad
- 13- Here ..... some advice to help you.
- a - is      b - are      c - were      d - has
- 14- What about ..... different work?
- a - did      b - doing      c - does      d - do
- 15- How fantastic .....!
- a - is the beach      b - the beach      c - the beach is      d - does the beach
- 16- There are many trees ..... the banks of the Nile.
- a - along      b - a long      c - as long      d - longer
- 17- Don't ..... it for granted that all people will help you for free.
- a - do      b - make      c - have      d - take
- 18- Everyone likes taking about .....
- a - himself      b - herself      c - themselves      d - myself
- 19- Researchers ask people to ..... in a form.
- a - complete      b - fill      c - common      d - confirm
- 20- They ask them about the ..... of their family.
- a - organs      b - jury      c - judge      c - members
- 21- How ..... do you live?
- a - comfortable      c - comfort      c - comforting      d - comfortably
- 22- The government tries to ..... education.
- a - prove      b - improve      c - pride      d - proud
- 23- They need to lead better life, lead means .....
- a - drive      b - buy      c - die      d - have
- 24- Don't interfere in other people affairs and don't ask them ..... questions.
- a - personal      b - person      c - personnel      d - personality
- 25- English is my ..... school subject..
- a - favour      b - favourite      c - flavor      d - favouritism
- 26- Try asking people about the sports they would like to .....
- a - make      b - have      c - playing      d - do
- 27- I haven't decided yet which club I should .....
- a - join      b - member      c - apply      d - take
- 28- The opposite of pros is .....
- a - cons      b - coins      c - comes      d - coon
- 29- If you are ..... of a team ,your teammates will help you.
- a - party      b - part      c - a part      d - parts
- 30- Your teammates may feel ..... to you .
- a - connection      b - contacted      c - connected      d - communicate
- 31- ..... is a precious treasure so I always search for good friends.
- a - Friendship      b - Enmity      c - Hatred      d - Greed
- 32- I am busy ..... my lessons.
- a - study      b - to study      c - studying      d - to studying
- 33- Why is it a good idea to ask people ..... themselves?.



- a - about                      b - on                      c - for                      d - of
- 34- How can you find out ..... clubs and sports?  
a - about                      b - on                      c - for                      d - of
- 35- The synonym of pros is .....  
a - disadvantages                      b - advantages                      c - cons                      d - demerits
- 36- If you are part of a team ,your ..... will feel connected to you.  
a - friendship                      b - relation                      c - teammates                      d - tame
- 37- If you are hungry, why don't buy cookies at the school .....?  
a - secretary                      b - office                      c - playground                      d - canteen
- 38- I usually ..... hello to my new friends.  
a - tell                      b - talk                      c - say                      d - speak
- 39- My family ..... to a new town last year.  
a - moved                      b - removed                      c - movement                      d - worked
- 40- Does this programme ..... any problems you have?  
a - remind                      b - remember                      c - tell                      d - mention
- 41- New students are always.....their own at the break- time.  
a - about                      b - on                      c - for                      d - of
- 42- Who can help you.....your homework at home?  
a - do                      b - doing                      c - make                      d - making
- 43- The first two exams are three hours .....  
a - length                      b - tall                      c - long                      d - high
- 44- Which subjects are you good .....?  
a - for                      b - at                      c - to                      d - on
- 45- This medicine is going to help you ..... better  
a - feel                      b - fall                      c - felt                      d - fell
- 46- ..... is a problem where some people use their strength to hurt others.  
a - Bull                      b - Dull                      c - Bullying                      d - Ball
- 47- Did you listen to the radio phone- in ..... bullying?  
a - of                      b - about                      c - off                      d - on
- 48- What effect has the bullying had ..... Ali?  
a - at                      b - on                      c - for                      d - of
- 49- The radio show host says that a lot of teenagers are ..... at school  
a - bully                      b - bullying                      c - bullied                      d - bull
- 50- Yesterday I saw a movie about a ten- ..... old girl who got lost in a jungle.  
a - years                      b - year                      c - year's                      d - years'
- 51- Ahmed always carries his ..... on his back when he goes climbing  
a - rucksack                      b - wardrobe                      c - cupboard                      d - table
- 52- I was ..... because I saw a scary film  
a - pleased                      b - happy                      c - delighted                      d - scared
- 53- Teenagers who are different to others are bullied more .....  
a - often                      b - many                      c - much                      d - little
- 54- How can we help people from different places instead ..... bullying them.  
a - about                      b - on                      c - for                      d - of
- 55- The bully is the person who is ..... to others  
a - kind                      b - modest                      c - nasty                      d - merciful
- 56- It is well-known that smoking has a ..... effect on health.  
a - negative                      b - positive                      c - positively                      d - negatively
- a - connection                      b - communication                      c - connect                      d - connected
- 59- He has a difficult problem , he always asks his parents for.....  
a - solve                      b -advise                      c - advisable                      d - advice
- 60- We should think carefully of everything instead of taking them for .....  
a - gratitude                      b - granite                      c - granted                      d - groom
- 61- Mr. Hesham spent most of his time ..... the lessons which he will explain.  
a - prepare                      b - preparing                      c - to prepare                      d - prepared
- 62- The information about the new competition can be seen on the .....  
a - noticeboard                      b - broad                      c - abroad                      d - boarding
- 63- Athletics .....people and countries a lot.

a - benefits

b - benefit

c - is benefited

d - have benefited

64- The antonym of **positive** is .....

a - good

b - nice

c - negative

d - fine

65- I feel ..... and became very angry when I can't find the remote control.

a - delighted

b - pleased

c - stressed

d - pressure

66- The headmaster promised he would punish the ..... who hit his classmate.

a - bully

b - teacher

c - clerk

d - actor

67- Years ago, my father gave me a piece of ..... that I've never forgotten.

a) advice

b) connection

c) noticeboard

d) article

68- The coach put the list of players up on the ..... before the match.

a) lecture

b) advice

c) blackboard

d) noticeboard

69- I never work at the weekends. I just took it for .....

a) greeted

b) granted

c) graded

d) grunted

70- When I feel ....., I try to relax in an open area.

a) happy

b) glad

c) pleased

d) stressed

71- I asked for ..... two weeks to finish the work.

a) favourite

b) cool

c) personal

d) extra

72- The tourists sat by the pool and ..... the sun.

a) lost

b) hid

c) appeared

d) faced

73- He ..... his doctor's advice and went on a diet to lose weight.

a) followed

b) gave

c) provided

d) neglected

74- Rana has been under a lot of ..... lately because of her difficult exams.

a) press

b) compress

c) stress

d) mattress

75- Will you just sit down and ..... for five minutes?

a) feel

b) relax

c) forget

d) join

76- To keep fit, I think you should ..... a gym class.

a) go

b) attach

c) join

d) connect

77- I had no close ..... with other boys at school.

a) articles

b) conversations

c) advice

d) friendships

78- I will ..... you my advice in twenty-four hours.

a) make

b) give

c) do

d) spend

79- There are three more ..... before the concert. We want to do well in it.

a) articles

b) magazines

c) practices

d) information

80- It was obvious that she had ..... her homework and thoroughly prepared for her interview

a) done

b) made

c) given

d) taken

81- Mazen always finds it easy to ..... friends at school.

a) give

b) take

c) do

d) make

82- This TV set should be ..... to the power supply.

a) contacted

b) connected

c) related

d) communicated

83- My daughter is revising ..... her history exam.

a) for

b) in

c) at

d) with

84- We look ..... our neighbours' cat while they're away.

a) at

b) for

c) after

d) like

85- Do you think I can ..... these shoes with this dress?

a) wear

b) put off

c) dress

d) swear

86- Sit back and relax, and enjoy the music. The antonym of the word "relax" is .....

a) calm

b) worry

c) detach

d) withdraw

87- I'm sorry but my diary is ..... I don't let anyone else read it.

a) personnel

b) personality

c) personal

d) person

88- All through the afternoon, they sat and talked ..... their trip.

a) for

b) from

c) to

d) about

89- We will move ..... our new house next year.

a) for

b) to

c) from

d) in

90- A group of girls would ..... the younger kids, and force them to give them money.

a) cheat

b) police

c) bully

d) nurse

91- My daughter ..... in the test by using a calculator.

a) behaved

b) bullied

c) continued

d) cheated

92- ..... is the best profession in the world, so she hopes to join it.

- a) Nursing      b) Bullying      c) Cheating      d) Copying
- 93-A.....is a discussion of a particular subject in which people express different opinions.  
a) chat      b) debate      c) gossip      d) conversation
- 94-My mother thanked the.....for their hospitality.  
a) hosts      b) guests      c) visitors      d) bankers
- 95-He was accused of trying to.....evidence from the police.  
a) appear      b) hide      e) remain      d) ride
- 96-The books are.....alphabetically, according to the name of the author.  
a) lasted      b) enlisted      c) enrolled      d) listed
- 97-I watched a good match between Al-Ahly and Zamalek. It was a really..... match.  
a) pioneering      b) unimportant      c) exciting      d) valueless
- 98-My friend lives.....after his parents died last year.  
a) alone      b) lonely      c) lone      d) looming
- 99- Carrying a..... over your shoulder for a long time is likely to harm you.  
a) file      b) wallet      c) purse      d) rucksack
- 100- If you don't know what the word means, look it ..... in a dictionary.  
a) at      b) for      c) up      d) forward
- 101-2000 people joined the library last year. The synonym of the word "joined" is .....  
a) detach      b) confront      c) unite      d) detest
- 103- I'll just go ..... and look up his address. It is very urgent.  
a) outline      b) baseline      c) offline      d) online
- 104- Aya is busy..... for her exams. She is a clever student.  
a) studying      b) study      c) to study      d) studied
- 105-We want our students to become ..... and responsible members of society.  
a) harmful      b) useful      c) useless      d) used
- 106- You need to have legal ..... by a lawyer in order to deal with this case properly.  
a) device      b) advice      c) advance      d) reason
- 107-The boy tried to ..... the little kids into giving him their money.  
a) bully      b) holly      c) pull      d) respect
- 108- Who would do business with him after that? Everyone knows he's a .....  
a) miracle      b) loyal      c) cheat      d) cheerful
- 109-There is no use ..... with them; they've already made up their minds.  
a) debating      b) joking      c) sharing      d) chatting
- 110- The speaker's words ..... the audience, who suddenly rose out of their seats and began to shout.  
a) existed      b) respected      c) exerted      d) excited
- 111- The names of the honoured student will appear on the ..... during the school party.  
a) cardboard      b) dashboard      c) gate board      d) noticeboard
- 112- I was so happy to see that my young daughter did her work .... her own  
a) in      b) on      c) by      d) at
- 113- Surprisingly, the crime was done by a 15..... -old boy.  
a) years      b) year's      c) year      d) years
- 114- During the last holiday, I spent nearly hve ..... pounds.  
a) thousands      b) thousand's      c) thousand      d) thousands'
- 115- My friend likes watching action films and I like them .....  
a) either      b) so      c) to      d) too
- 116- My friend doesn't like watching action films and I don't like them .....  
a) either      b) so      c) to      d) too
117. Getting the Nobel Prize was the ..... of Naguib Mahfouz's life.  
a. addressee      b. project      c. highlight      d. punctuation
118. He is still ..... what to do. It isn't easy for him to decide.  
a. debating      b. preferring      c. expressing      d. believing

### 1- Choose the Two (2) correct answers out of the Five (5) options given:

- 1.....are antonyms of the word effect.  
a. affection      b. affect      c. influence      d. cause      e. reason
- 2..All parents are concerned with their children's health." In this sentence, the words 'concerned with' can be replaced by .....  
a. interested in      b. affected by      c. interesting to      d. effect on      d. attentive

3. Optional and compulsory are.....

- a. opposites                      b. antonyms                      C. synonyms                      d. the same                      e. alike

4. "She nurses her old mother." "Nurses' here is a synonym of.....

- a. looks for                      b. takes turns                      c. looks after                      d. takes off                      e. nurture

5. Danger is antonymous with .....

- a. safe                      b. safety                      C. secure                      d. security                      e. imperilment

6. My diary is.....I don't like anyone to read it.

- a. general                      b. personal                      C. public                      d. private                      e. jolly

7. We face a lot of problems, but we will overcome it. The synonyms of face are.....

- a. confront                      b. leave                      c. neglect                      d. encounter                      e. detest

8. You should make sure that you are connected to the internet. "Connected" means.....

- a. cool                      b. interested                      c. linked                      d. joined                      e. celebrated

## Grammar

### The Definite & Indefinite Articles

#### A - An

|                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>A</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                  | - تستخدم قبل الاسم المفرد النكرة الذي يعد المبدوء بحرف ساكن |
| <b>a boy – a girl – a man – a woman – a hand – a lamp - a car - a farm .</b>                                                                                                                              |                                                             |
| ❖ قبل الاسم المفرد النكرة المبدوء بحرف <b>U</b> تنطق <b>-U</b> :<br>- a one-way road اسم a uniform – a useful thing- a unit – a union – a united + a university – a European country<br>universal - usual |                                                             |
| <b>An</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                 | ❖ تستخدم قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يعد المبدوء بحرف متحرك:      |
| <b>an apple – an egg – an inkpot – an orange – an elephant.</b>                                                                                                                                           |                                                             |
| قبل الاسم المفرد المبدوء بحرف <b>H</b> الساكنة المتبوعة بحرف متحرك:<br><b>an hour – an honest man – an x-ray- an heir</b> وريت <b>- an honourable man.</b>                                                |                                                             |

تستخدم أداة النكرة في الحالات الآتية:

1- قبل أي اسم مفرد يشير إلى واحد من مجموعة:

**We've got a car. Every family has a computer.**

**a beautiful girl – an unpleasant book**

**I saw a man coming.**

**He is a teacher - My uncle is an engineer .....**

2 - قبل الصفة إن وجدت قبل الاسم المفرد - :

3 - تستخدم قبل الاسم عند ذكره لأول مرة.

4- لنشير إلى وظائف الأشخاص

5- تستخدم **an/a** في الجمل الدالة على التعجب قبل الاسم المفرد

**- What a clever student!**

**-What an exciting film .!**

6 -تستخدم **an/a** مع التعبيرات الدالة على العدد والتمن والسرعة وأدوات التجزئة والكميات

**a dozen /a couple/ a pair /a thousand/ a hundred/a cup/ an hour /a lot**

**( an hour/a pair of shoes/ a couple of minutes/80 kilometers)**

**( a cold /a headache / a toothache/ a stomachache )**

7- قبل أسماء بعض الأمراض الشائعة 7 - :

8- قبل الجنسيات والصفات المتبوعة باسم مفرد

9 - لا نستخدم **a / an** قبل الأسماء الجمع أو الأسماء التي لا تعد ولا الأسماء المعنوية.

**-He is an English boy.**

**I read an exciting story**

**Fish is my favourite food. I'm wearing black shoes.**

تستخدم في الحالات الآتية

**the sun – the sky – the earth – the world**

❖ كل اسم مميز لأنه فريد في الكون :

كل اسم مميز لأنه فريد على وجه الأرض كأسماء المعالم الجغرافية الرئيسية ماعدا الجبال والجزر والبحيرات  
والواحات المفردة: the River Nile – the Red sea – the High Dam – the Eiffel Tower – the Alps

I asked a question and the teacher replied.

كل اسم مميز لأنه فريد في حيز ما :

كل اسم نكرة جاء بعده ما يحدده كضمير وصل أو جار ومجرور أو تكرر في نفس الجملة:

The little girl in blue is Fatma. This is the man who helped us yesterday.

I bought a book and a pencil but the book was broken.

مع السينما والمسرح والراديو والانترنت

مع أسماء البلاد إذا كانت تحتوي على:

كل اسم مفرد يشير الى الفكرة العامة يأخذ ( the ) وكذلك في التعريفات:

The lion is a fierce animal. The teacher is a person who works in a school.

The Holy Qur'an – The Bible – The Ten Commandments

قبل الكتب المقدسة :

the seventies (1970s) – the sixties (1960s) السنينات

قبل العقود الزمنية:

first – second – third – morning – evening – afternoon

قبل كلمات مثل :

مع العبارات التي تشير للزمن والاتجاه وأجزاء الجسم

the present – the past – the back – the front – the body – the brain...

مع أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات والألقاب والمناخ وأسماء الشوارع والأماكن المشهورة

the government – the police – the army – the United Nations – the climate – the weather – the press –  
the Nasr Street – the Pyramids .....

عندما نتحدث عن اكتشاف أو اختراع ( ولكن تأخذ an / كأداة أو سلعة )

the telephone – the computer – the television – the plane .....

مع أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات والألقاب والمناخ وأسماء الشوارع والأماكن المشهورة:

He plays / teaches / learns / listens to / practices the piano.

the tallest – the shortest – the oldest – the most

The more you eat, the fatter you become.

مع جمل المقارنة:

the rich – the young – the dead – the living

مع الصفة في الدرجة الثالثة :

-The camel bears thirst . ( All camels bear thirst )  
-The giraffe has a long neck . - All giraffes have long necks

قبل اسم الحيوان المفرد لتشير إلى النوع  
كله ( ويأتي بعده الفعل في صيغة المفرد )

The problem of pollution

مع أسماء بعض الأماكن و المباني التي يأتي معها

the cinema - the internet - the office, the radio theatre ,  
the army , the post office, the police the government –  
the United Nations –  
climate – the weather – the press ...

قبل أسماء الفنادق والمسارح والنوادي والمطاعم ودور  
السينما أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات والألقاب والمناخ

١١ - تستخدم the قبل أسماء الأماكن التالية إذا استخدمت لغير غرضها الأساسي ( للزيارة مثلاً )

(School – university – hospital – prison – mosque – church – market)

12- قبل أسماء البحار والمحيطات والأنهار والقنوات

The Suez Canal-the Panama Canal- the Atlantic Ocean- the Amazon- the Indian Ocean-  
The Mediterranean sea - The Red sea – the pacific ocean – the River Nile

13 - قبل أسماء سلاسل الجبال ومجموعات البحيرات ومجموعات الجزر والصحاري والواحات

The Alps جبال الالب The Himalayas - جبال الهمالايا The Andes - جبال الاندز The Great lakes -- the siwa oasis

The Caribbean islands جبال الكاريبي the Bahamas جزر البهاما the Sahara desert- the West Indias



١٥ - نستخدم *the* مع الجهات

The north of – The south of – The east of – The west of

١٦ - نستخدم *the* مع أرقام الترتيب الآتية:**The only.....the last, the first, the second, the third, the fourth.....etc.****Ex: Asmaa was *the only girl who attended the lesson.***

١٧ - مع الألقاب التي لم يذكر معها اسم The queen / the prince/the king/the president/the professor:-

**• ولا نستخدم أى أداة فى الحالات الآتية:**❖ مع الأسماء التي تعد فى حالة الجمع بوجه عام ولكن عند التخصيص تأخذ ( *the* )  
**men – children – vitamins – doctors – flowers – trees .....**

❖ مع الأسماء التي لا تعد والمعنوية بشكل عام وتشمل

:  
 ❖ milk – tea – coffee – bread أسماء الطعام والشراب  
 ❖ glass – wood – gold المواد عندما تستخدم بوجه عام  
 ❖ الألعاب الرياضية مثل  
 ❖ الأسماء المجردة مثل :  
 ❖ المواد الدراسية :  
 ❖ أسماء اللغات :  
 قبل الوجبات ( إلا فى حالة الدعوة )  
 Basketball is not as popular as football. :  
 beauty – freedom, love, sadness, happiness .....  
 Science, History, English, Arabic .....  
 Arabic , English , French, Spanish .....  
 breakfast, lunch, dinner, supper

I invited my friend to the dinner. I had a big breakfast.

لاحظ

قبل الأماكن الآتية إذا كان الذهاب إليها أو استخدامها للغرض الذى أنشئت من أجله

school, bed, hospital, prison, court, church, mosque, college.

Ex: He went to hospital because he had eaten bad food .

ولكن نستخدم إذا كان الذهاب إليها لأغراض أخرى كالزيارة او المقابلة

He went to the school to meet the headmaster.

لا نضع *the* قبل **television** إذا قصدنا برامج التلفزيون

Ex: I watched a movie on television . - I usually watch TV in the evening

ولكن نضع *the* قبل **television** إذا قصدنا جهاز التلفزيون

Ex: He put the glass on the television . - Can you turn off the television, please?

٤ - قبل أسم البحيرة المفردة أو الجبل المفرد أو الجزر المفردة.

Malta island Lake Nasser Mount Everest Mount Sinai جبل سيناء.

- قبل الصفات المشتقة من الجهات western – eastern – southern – northern

Ex: I visited southern America

٧ - قبل الشهور وفصول السنة وأيام الأسبوع

winter – spring – autumn – summer – January-Saturday- Monday

**EXERCISES ON GRAMMAR****Choose the correct answer :**

- 1-Yesterday, we had ( a - an -the -no article ) new test.
- 2-I got the information on ( a - an -the -no article ) internet.
- 3-I took a photo of my friend, but ( a - an -the -no article ) photo was so bad.
- 4-I usually eat ( a - an -the -no article ) apple for breakfast.
- 5-Do you know where ( a - an -the -no article ) dog is?
- 6-My brother spends hours talking on ( a - an -the -no article ) phone.
- 7-I didn't enjoy the match yesterday. ( a - an -the -no article ) referee was terrible
- 8-Yesterday, I went to ( a - an -the -no article ) library at school.

- 9-The rich should help ( a - an -the -no article ) poor.
- 10-My father is ( a - an -the -no article ) doctor and works in a hospital.
- 11-In fact, he's one of ( a - an -the -no article ) best doctors in our town.
- 12-( a - an -the -no article ) town which I'm talking about is Fakous.
- 13-You shouldn't look at ( a - an -the -no article ) sun. It can damage your eyes.
- 14-Yesterday I found ( a - an -the -no article ) mobile phone in the road.
- 15-Hussein said that he lost ( a - an -the -no article ) phone which he had bought last week.
- 16-When I showed him ( a - an -the -no article ) phone that I'd found, he knew it.
- 17( a - an -the -no article ) Nile is the longest river in the world.
- 18-I saw ( a - an -the -no article ) accident this morning.
- 19-We live in ( a - an -the -no article ) old house near to the Nile
- 20-When I leave school, I want to be ( a - an -the -no article ) tourist guide
- 20.I had an interview for ( a - an -the -no article ) new job.
- 21.Samy had an interview for a job in ( a - an -the -no article ) office.
- 22-The company gave the job to someone ( a - an -the -no article ) year older than me
- 23( a - an -the -no article ) mobile phone was invented in 1973
- 24.My brother is ( a - an -the -no article ) fastest swimmer in our school.
- 25-A banana is ( a - an -the -no article ) sweet yellow fruit that grows in hot countries.
- 26-( a - an -the -no article ) sun is the star that gives the earth warmth and light.
- 27-The moon is a planet in ( a - an -the -no article ) sky.
- 28-The Sahara Desert is ( a - an -the -no article ) largest desert in the world.
- 29-When grandfather was young, hardly anyone had ( a - an -the -no article ) television.
- 30.Seventy years ago, only ( a - an -the -no article ) few rich people could afford a television.
- 31.Seventy years ago, most families had ( a - an -the -no article ) radio.
- 32.My sister had ( a - an -the -no article ) new baby boy last week.
33. I saw ( a - an -the -no article ) very big crocodile in the pond.
35. He comes from ( a - an -the -no article ) United States of America.
36. All tourists like to see ( a - an -the -no article ) pyramids.
37. I always have ( a - an -the -no article ) breakfast at home with my parents.
38. I had ( a - an -the -no article ) big breakfast this morning so I'm not hungry.
39. They stayed in ( a - an -the -no article ) wonderful hotel in Rome.
40. ( a - an -the -no article ) young can help to make Egypt better.
41. The horse is ( a - an -the -no article ) fast animal.
42. The horse is ( a - an -the -no article ) fastest animal.
43. Horses are ( a - an -the -no article ) fast animals.
44. The tiger is a member of ( a - an -the -no article ) cat family.
45. Have you seen ( a - an -the -no article ) moon tonight?
46. Can I have ( a - an -the -no article ) orange not two?
47. Do you like ( a - an -the -no article ) orange or blue?
48. Doctors examine ( a - an -the -no article ) sick people.
- 49- Mahmoud went to a school in Cairo( a - an -the -no article ) school was very big
- 50- This is ( a - an -the -no article ) first time that the tourists have seen the Pyramids.

## Countable and Uncountable Nouns

### 1. Countable Nouns

وهي الأسماء التي تجمع وتعد ويكتب قبلها في حالة المفرد a – an – one أو this / that / the في الجمع ( some / any / a lot of / many / (a) few / a number of / the / my ) .

- My teachers encourage me and a lot of students to do our best.
- I saw an accident in the square.

إذا ذكرت في جملة ثانية هي الأسماء التي يمكن أن نضع لها s في آخرها في حالة الجمع، قد يكون للاسم معدود جمع شاذ

١- جمع عادي → a wife → wives - a baby → babies - an apple → apples - a watch → watches - a car → cars

٢- جمع شاذ يحفظ مثل :

– نساء women امرأة woman – رجال men رجل man – ظواهر phenomena ظاهرة phenomenon – أطفال children طفل Child (   
 خروف sheep غزلان deer غزالة Deer – إوز geese إوزة goose – أقدام feet قدم foot – أسنان teeth سنّة tooth – ثيران oxen ثور Ox   
 – قواعد bases قاعدة basis – أسماك fish سمكة fish – واحات oases واحة Oasis – وسائل means وسيلة means – خرفان sheep   
 ( فصائل species فصيلة species – وسائل media وسيلة medium )

3- هناك كلمات تتكون من جزأين وتعتبر دائما جمع الا اذا سبقها **a pair of** :

socks / shoes / shorts / trousers / glasses / pants / gloves / scissors

- My shoes are clean.

- A pair of Italian shoes is very expensive.

4- هناك كلمات جمع ليس لها مفرد وتعتبر دائما جمع:

police / clothes / people / goods / troops / arms / remains / cattle

- The police are looking for two criminals.

5- هناك كلمات تبقى كما هي في المفرد والجمع مع حذف أداة النكرة عند الجمع:

- The train is a cheap means of transport.

- Buses and trains are means of public transport.

6- هناك كلمات فى شكلها المفرد تأخذ فعل مفرد ككل أو جمع كأفراد:

team / generation / couple / crew / gang / staff / navy / group / government / committee / family / class / army

- Mr Hesham's family is big.

- My family are having tea now.

## 2. Uncountable Nouns

- أما الأسماء التي لا تعد s فهي الأسماء التي لا يمكن أن نضع لها s أو a أو an في حالات الجمع أو المفرد. ولا يمكننا وضع one أو two قبلها ومنها الاتي :

- The news you told me yesterday was depressing - Ice melts in the sun.

-المواد الدراسية والألعاب الرياضية والأمراض المنتهية بحرف s يُستخدم معها فعل مفرد:

Athletics / billiards / gymnastics / mathematics / dominoes / statistics / physics / genetics / classics / politics / economics / measles / diabetes. ( is - has -was-goes....)

-العبارات الدالة على الكمية و المبالغ المالية والزمن و الثمن و المسافة و الوزن ودرجات الحرارة تأخذ فعل مفرد:

- Ten million pounds is a lot of money. - Fifty litres of petrol fills my car.

-هناك كلمات لها معنيان احدهما يعد والاخر لا يعد:

a means / means / a series / series / a species / species / a sheep / sheep/ a deer / deer / a youth / youth

\* بعض الكلمات التي لا تعد يمكن أن تسبقها الأداة a/an إذا جاءت قبلها الصفة

Ex : We had a nice breakfast.

- I spent a nice time on the beach.

- الأسماء التي لاتعد لا نستخدم قبلها أدوات النكرة a / an ولا تجمع وتأخذ فعل مفرد :

|                 |                                                                   |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| School subjects | history / chemistry / biology / geography / philosophy            |
| Abstract nouns  | beauty / confidence / courage / honesty / peace / poverty         |
| Sports          | football / hockey / tennis / volleyball / squash / chess          |
| Gases           | oxygen / nitrogen / hydrogen / carbon dioxide                     |
| Languages       | English / French / Italian / Spanish / German / Arabic            |
| Meals           | breakfast / lunch / dinner / supper                               |
| Liquids         | water / coffee / oil / milk / soup / blood / tea / juice / petrol |
| Activities      | shopping / studying / writing / smoking / reading / washing       |

## Other nouns

meat / rice / oil / butter / macaroni / cheese / sugar / salt /  
bread / beef / furniture / gold / silver / iron / copper / brass /  
tin / cotton / silk / wool / information / news / luggage /  
baggage / equipment / evidence / advice / paper / tourism /  
fever / flu.

## Countable

## معدود

a glass كوب زجاج

Please, give me a glass of water .

glass زجاج

This window is made of glass .

a paper جريدة

I'm going to buy a paper.(= a newspaper)

paper ورق

Paper is made of wood

a time مرة واحدة

He went to London three times

time وقت

Don't hurry. There's plenty of time

a cold نزلة برد

I've got a bad cold.

cold البرد

The cold is unbearable this winter.

a chicken دجاجة

I saw lots of chickens on grandfather's farm

chicken لحم دجاج

Do you like chicken?

a light لمبة

There are four lights in our classroom.

light الضوء

The sun gives us light and heat.

a hair شعرة

There are four hairs on your jacket.

hair شعر

Her hair is long.

an iron مكواة

I bought an iron yesterday.

iron حديد

- Hospital beds are made of iron.

a coffee فنجان قهوة

Could I have two coffees? (cups of coffee)

coffee قهوة

Much coffee is harmful to your health

an orange برتقالة

There are two oranges on the table.

orange برتقالي (لون)

I don't like orange. I prefer red

A School

(المدرسة مبنى)

They're building a new school in the village.

School

(الدراسة/ التعليم المدرسي)

She drives the kids to school every morning

A university

(الجامعة مبنى)

The government will build a new university next year

university التعليم الجامعي

After finishing university, she traveled abroad

## Study well:

a lot of – many – much – a few – few – a little – little – none- each – every – some- any

## a lot of

تستخدم (plenty of- a lot of) في الإثبات مع الكلمات التي تعد و  
الكلمات التي لا تعد - لاحظ إن

- نستخدم lots of مع الكلمات التي تعد و لا تعد

- Ali has got a lot of / lots of/ plenty of books.

I like films ,so I go to the cinema

- We ate a lot / plenty of cheese.

يمكن ان نستخدم a lot بدون اسم

- a lot.

**Many**

: تأتي قبل اسم يعد في الاثبات و النفي و الاستفهام

- I haven't got many friends.

- Do you have many friends?

(so - as - too - a good - a great) ملحوظة يمكن تأتي (many) في جملة خبرية مثبتة إذا سبقها

- There are too many people in the bus.

- He has a great many suits.

we say (many years / many weeks / many days)

لاحظ

We've lived here for many years. (not usually a lot of years)

**Much**

: تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد في النفي و الاستفهام

- Did you eat much cheese?

- We didn't eat much cheese

(so - very - as - too) much ملحوظة يمكن ان تأتي (much) في جملة خبرية مثبتة إذا سبقها

- I miss you so much. - There is too much water in the bottle.

we use (too much / so much / as much) in positive sentences.

لاحظ

We spent too much money.

**a few**

=some

: تأتي قبل اسم يعد وتشير إلى عدد قليل ولكن يكفي في الجملة المثبتة.

- I have a few (= a small number) pounds so I can buy a shirt

"When was the last time you saw Clare?" 'A few days ago.' (= 3 or 4 days

ago)

**Few**

not

many

تأتي قبل اسم يعد وتشير إلى عدد قليل ولا يكفي في الجملة المثبتة:

I have few pounds so I can't buy a shirt

**a little**

=some

تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد وتشير إلى كمية قليلة ولكن تكفي في الجملة المثبتة

I have a little (= a small amount) sugar but it is enough to make a cup

of tea.

**Little**

Not

much

تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد وتشير إلى كمية قليلة ولا يكفي في الجملة المثبتة

I have little sugar so I can't make a cup of tea.

: تأتي قبل اسم يعد أو اسم لا يعد في جملة خبرية مثبتة وايضا (somebody/someone/something)

**some**

- My mother knows some good stories. (اسم يعد)

- I drank some water. (اسم لا يعد)

There's somebody at the door. -I want something to eat.

و في سؤالي العرض والطلب.

- Would you like some tea? (عرض)

- Can I have some of these apples? (طلب)

**any**

: تأتي قبل اسم يعد أو اسم لا يعد في جملة استفهامية أو منفية.

(anybody/anyone/anything)

- I don't want any stamps. (اسم يعد)

- I didn't drink any milk. (اسم لا يعد)

-There isn't anybody at the door.

-I don't want anything to eat.

-He went out without any money.

- It's a very easy exam. Hardly anybody fails. = almost nobody fails.



تستخدم لنفي **some** مع نفي الفعل.

- I bought **some books**.

- I **didn't** buy **any books**.

- She has **some money**.

- She **doesn't** have **any money**.

تأتي مع الكلمات الدالة على النفي مثل :

**hardly – never – without – refuse – too ..... to**

- He **never** had **any** luck.

- We **hardly** had **any** money.

تستخدم مع **If** الدالة والمعبرة عن الشك .

- If anyone **has any questions**, I'll be pleased to answer them.

لاحظ

- Let me know if you **need anything**. - I'm sorry for **any trouble I've caused**

- The police want to speak **to anyone who saw the accident**.

- You can **take any bus**. They all go to the centre .

- We forgot to lock the door. **Anybody could** have come in.

**Somebody/someone/anybody/anyone** ( مفرد ) - they/them/their ( ضمير جمع )

**Someone** has forgotten **their umbrella**.

تلخيص مهم

كلمات تسبق الاسم الذي يعد في حالة الجمع والذي لا يعد:

|                                    |                                              |                                                              |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1- a lot of / plenty of            | كثير من (عدد - كمية (في الإثبات)             | We have a lot of friends.<br>We need plenty of milk.         |
| 2- many (more - the most)          | عدد كثير من                                  | Nada can't revise many poems.                                |
| 3- much (more - the most)          | كمية كثيرة من                                | She has much sugar in her tea.                               |
| 4- few (fewer - fewest)            | عدد قليل لا يكفي                             | Few students are absent.                                     |
| 5- a few (fewer - fewest)          | عدد قليل يكفي                                | A few students are absent.                                   |
| 6- little (less / least)           | كمية لا تكفي                                 | There's little salt in the food.                             |
| 7- a little (less / least)         | كمية تكفي                                    | There's a little salt in the food.                           |
| 8- A number of + فعل جمع + اسم جمع |                                              | A number of the boys are absent.                             |
| 9- One of + فعل مفرد + اسم جمع     |                                              | One of the boys isn't here.                                  |
| 10- V-ing + فعل مفرد + اسم جمع     |                                              | Reading books is my hobby.                                   |
| 11- some                           | بعض (إثبات وسؤال العرض والطلب)<br>عدد - كمية | She bought some eggs / oil.<br>Can you lend me some money?   |
| 12- any                            | أي (نفي - سؤال استفساري)<br>عدد - كمية       | Have you got any sisters?<br>I haven't seen any birds there. |

- How many girls are in your class ?

- There are twenty four.

- How much coffee do you drink ?

- Three cups.

- يمكن استخدام أدوات تجزئة مع الكلمات التي لا تعد و عند الجمع تجمع أداة التجزئة فقط:

|                        |                   |                      |               |
|------------------------|-------------------|----------------------|---------------|
| a piece of jewellery   | قطعة من المجوهرات | a grain of sand      | كوم من الرمال |
| a slice of meat        | شريحة من اللحم    | a loaf of bread      | رغيف عيش      |
| an item of information | مصطلح علمي        | a sheet of paper     | فرد ورق       |
| a packet of paper      | باكورق            | a piece of advice    | نصيحة واحدة   |
| a jar of jam           | برطمان مربى       | a bar of soap        | قطعة صابون    |
| a piece of music       | مقطوعة موسيقية    | a lump of sugar      | مكعب سكر      |
| a cup of coffee        | فنجان قهوة        | a bag of flour       | شنطة دقيق     |
| a glass of lemonade    | كوب عصير          | a tube of toothpaste | أنبوب معجون   |
| a bottle of milk       | زجاجة من الحليب   | a bar of chocolate   | قطعة شيكولاته |

**Choose the correct answer :**

- 1- How many seconds ( is - are - were - would ) there in an hour?
- 2- How ( much - many - few - little ) money do you have in your account?
- 3- Would you like ( some - much - a - any ) cup of tea?
- 4- One of the pages in the book ( is - are - were - have been ) torn.
- 5- We didn't take ( some - many - much - little ) photographs yesterday.
- 6- Ali was listening to ( a - many - one - some ) music when I arrived.
- 7- We didn't do ( a - much - many - some ) shopping last week.
- 8- I still have ( a little - much - one - a few ) things to do.
- 9- I am going to buy ( some - a few - two - one ) bread from the bakery.
- 10- If you want to know the news, you can read ( much paper - many paper - a paper - paper ).
- 11- I want to print the documents, but my printer is out of ( papers - paper - a paper - many papers ).
- 12- Bad news ( don't - doesn't - haven't - aren't ) make people happy.
- 13- John is unemployed. He doesn't find ( job - profession - work - position ).
- 14- Can you give me ( an - some - many - one ) advice?
- 15- I don't have ( many - some - much - a lot ) luggage.
- 16- They spend ( a lot of - many - a few - a ) money on travel.
- 17- Athletics ( is - are - has - have ) my favourite sport.
- 18- I need a new ( pair - couple - double - jar ) of sunglasses.
- 19- I have ( some - a little - any - a lot ) problems. Can you help me?
- 20- How ( much - many - few - little ) students are there in your school?
- 21- Have you met ( a - some - one - any ) tourists in the museum?
- 22- She has ( the - an - a - many ) French name, but in fact she's English.
- 23- I am going away for ( some - many - any - a ) time in September.
- 24- She doesn't drink ( some - many - any - a ) tea with her food.
- 25- Would you like ( a - any - some - many ) sugar with your coffee?
- 26- I have got ( few - less - fewer - little ) goods than my neighbour.
- 27- How ( much - many - few - long ) coffees do you drink a day?
- 28- I'm not very hungry as I've just eaten ( a little - many - little - a few ) cake.
- 29- How ( much - many - few - long ) times do you go to the cinema?
- 30- Magda does not like airports as there is always a lot of ( noises - noise - a noise - the noise ).
- 31- Many people in Europe have light brown ( hairs - hair - hairy - the hairs ).
- 32- ( The chicken - Chickens - Chicken - Some chickens ) is usually on the menu of that restaurant.
- 33- I have ( a little - many - little - a few ) money so I can't buy anything.
- 34- I have ( a little - few - little - a few ) friends so I can do a blog.
- 35- There were too ( many - much - little - a lot ) cars on the roads yesterday.
- 36- We have so many things to do but only ( a few - a little - a - fewer ) time.
- 37- At some airports, they sometimes reduce the ( amount - number - quantity - sum ) of planes landing and taking off at night.
- 38- The news you gave me ( is - are - have - has ) not correct.
- 39- How ( many - much - long - often ) ice cubes do you want?
- 40- There isn't ( much - many - few - any ) that anyone can do about the noise of traffic.
- 41- I went to the pharmacy to buy a ( jar - cup - tube - slice ) of toothpaste.
- 42- My grandpa always gives me ( packets - jars - slices - pieces ) of advice.
- 43- How many ( tins - bottles - boxes - jars ) of vegetables do you have in your cupboard?
- 44- Can you pass me the ( bar - far - jar - tar ) of honey please.
- 45- I'm not very hungry because I've just eaten a ( cup - bottle - jar - piece ) of cake.
- 46- Don't forget to buy a ( bottle - jar - spoon - cup ) of cola.
- 47- His grandmother always drinks a ( cup - jar - bottle - packet ) of tea with her food.
- 48- Ten kilometres ( have - been - is - are ) a long way to run.
- 49- The article was written on ( the - an - a - many ) sheet of paper.
- 50- Fifty litres of oil ( is - are - were - have ) enough for my car.
- 51- Maths.....my favourite subject when I was in school.  
a- was                      b- were                      c- is                      d- are
- 52- There is plenty of meat, but there is not.....bread.  
a- Plenty                      b- many                      c- much                      d- a lot
- 53- Six people.....injured in a bus accident yesterday.  
a- are                      b- was                      c- were                      d- is

54- How.....butter should you use?

a- many                      b- few                      c- much                      d- little

55- I take a.....of honey every morning.

a- jar                      b- tube                      c- glass                      d- spoonful

56- He hasn't got.....furniture in his house.

a- a lot of                      b- some                      c- any                      d- many

57- There are.....books on the shelf. They are not enough.

a- many                      b- few                      c- a lot of                      d- any

58- My brother has.....experience, so he didn't get the job.

a- a little                      b- a few                      c- little                      d- few

59- Are there.....biscuits left?

a- some                      b- a                      c- any                      d- an

60- He hasn't got.....luggage.

a- some                      b- much                      c- many                      d- a lot

61- After finishing....., he went to Oxford University.

a- school                      b- a school                      c- schools                      d- the school

62- Do you have.....sugar in our tea?

a- a lot                      b- much                      c- few                      d- many

63- Please can you go to the shops and buy a .....of honey.

a piece                      b cup                      c -jar                      d plate

64- Can you pass me the..... of cake.

a piece                      b cup                      c -jar                      d bottle

65- He looks different because he has had his ..... cut

a- hairs                      b- some hair                      c- a hair                      d- hair

66- I'd like two cups of ....., please.

a- coffees                      b- a coffee                      c- coffee                      d- much coffee

67- The air in the mountains ..... always so fresh.

a- are                      b- be                      c- were                      d- is

68- Would you like .....sugar with your coffee?

a- many                      b- any                      c- some                      d- a lot

69- I want to write a letter. Can I borrow ..... paper, please?

a- many                      b- any                      c- some                      d- a

70- During the night, I prefer listening to.....music.

a- many                      b- one                      c- some                      d- a

71- We must buy some milk. We hardly have.....left.

a- many                      b- any                      c- some                      d- much

72- Is a thousand pounds too.....to spend on a holiday?

a- many                      b- a lot                      c- lot                      d- much

73- I tried not to spend so ..... money on the party but in vain.

a) many                      b) some                      c) a lot of                      d) much

74- A: Do you have ..... juice left in the fridge?                      B: No, all of it had gone.

a) any                      b) some                      c) many                      d) a little

75- I still have ..... things to do.

a) a little                      b) much                      c) one                      d) a few

76- I am going to buy ..... bread from the bakery.

a) some                      b) a few                      c) two                      d) one

77- If you want to know the news, you can read .....

a) much paper                      b) many paper                      c) a paper                      d) paper

78- If you want to write any thing, you can use .....

a) much paper                      b) many paper                      c) a paper                      d) some paper

79- There isn't ..... money left to buy my own clothes.

a) many                      b) a lot of                      c) much                      d) a little

80- How..... people are there in the team?

a) much                      b) some                      c) number                      d) many

82- He asked me for ..... information about global warming.

a) any                      b) many                      c) some                      d) a lot

83- He has got.....water, hasn't he?

a) little                      b) a little                      c) few                      d) a few

84. He has got ..... water, has he?

- a) little      b) a little      c) few      d) a few

85- How ..... money do you have in your account?

- a) much      b) many      c) little      d) a lot

86. The children have had ..... excitement. I think they won't sleep early.

- a. few      b. much      c. many      d. enough

87. We don't have ..... time. We'll have to hurry.

- a) many      b) some      c) lot      d) much

88. How ..... times have you seen that film?

- a) many      b) much      c) lots      d) some

89. Didn't you bring ..... food with you? - I haven't prepared food yet.

- a) some      b) any      c) a      d) many

90. Can you give me ..... advice?

- a) an      b) some      c) many      d) all

## Time for skills

Choose the best translation:

1- To provide a comfortable life for its nation, the government should offer good services.

- 1 - لتوفير حياة مريحة لوطنها، يجب على الحكومة تقديم خدمات مريحة .
- 2 - لتوفير معيشة مريحة لشعبها، كان يجب على الحكومة تقديم بعض الخدمات الجيدة .
- 3 - يجب على الحكومة تقديم خدمات جيدة لتوفير معيشة مريحة لشعبها .
- 4 - كان يجب على الحكومة تقديم بعض الخدمات الجيدة لتوفير حياة بسيطة لشعبها .

2- Our great big cities don't suit modern living because of the great increase in population.

- 1 - لا تتناسب مدنها الكبيرة مع الحياة المعاصرة بسبب الزيادة الكبيرة في عدد السكان .
- 2 - لا تتناسب مدنها الحديثة مع الحياة الكبيرة بسبب الزيادة الواسعة في عدد السكان .
- 3 - تتناسب مدنها الكبيرة مع الحياة المعاصرة بسبب الزيادة المفرطة في عدد السكان .
- 4 - لا تتناسب مدنها الكبيرة مع الحياة المعاصرة بسبب الزيادة المحددة في عدد السكان .

3- We are in urgent need of a revolution against our bad behaviour. Really, we should resist any strange conduct.

- a نحن فى حاجة ماسة لثورة ضد السلوك السيئ . وحقاً، يجب أن نقاوم أى سلوك غريب .
- b نحن فى احتياج لثورة على السلوك السيئ . فى الحقيقة، يجب أن نقاوم أى تصرف متعصب .
- c نحن فى حاجة مستمرة لثورة ضد السلوك السيئ . فى الحقيقة، يجب أن نقاوم أى تصرف أجنبى .
- d نحن فى احتياج لثورة ضد السلوك السيئ . فى الحقيقة، يجب أن نقاوم أى سلوك أجنبى .

4- تتمتع مصر بالكثير من المواقع الأثرية القديمة والمنتجعات السياحية الحديثة، مما يجعلها واحدة من أكثر الدول الجاذبة للسياح .

- a. Egypt has many ancient historical sites and modern tourist resorts which makes it one of the most attractive countries for tourists.
- b. Egypt has many old historical sites and modern terrorist hotels which makes it one of the most countries for tourists.
- c. Egypt has much ancient historical sites and modern tourist resorts which makes it one of the most interactive countries for tourists.
- d. Egypt has many old historical sites and modern tourist hotels which made it the most attractive countries for tourists.

5- يأمل الكثير من الناس بأن تكون هناك سياحة آمنة للفضاء متاحة فى المستقبل القريب .

- a. Many people hop that safety space tourism will be available in the near future.
- b. A lot of people hopped that safely space tourism will be predictable in the near future.
- c. Many people hope that space terrorism will be available in the near future.
- d. Many people hope that safe space tourism will be available in the near future.

6- إن القيام بواجباتك تجاه مجتمعك كمواطن صالح لابد أن يسبق قيامك بالمطالبة بحقوقك المشروعة .

- a. Carrying out your duties towards your community as a good civilian must precede asking for your legitimate rights.

- b. As a good citizen, carrying out your duties towards your community must precede asking for your legitimate rights.
- c. Carrying out your duties towards your community as a valid citizen must precede asking for your legitimate rights.
- d. As a good citizen, carrying out your duties towards your community must precede asking for your illegal rights.

## Test Unit four

### 1- Choose the Two (2) correct answers out of the Five (5) options given:

1 - Ali is angry with my brother. The word 'angry' are similar in meanings to.....  
a. contented      b. grumpy      c. satisfied      d. escaped      e. furious

2. We should value our friendship with others. The antonyms of friendship are.....  
a. generosity      b. sincerity      c. publicity      d. enmity      e. hatred

### 1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I- Tourism plays a.....role in our national income

a - negative      b - positive      c - passive      d - drawback

2 - Is there a.....between crime and poverty?

a - connection      b - communication      c - connect      d - connected

3 - He has a difficult problem , he always asks his parents for.....

a - solve      b - advise      c - advisable      d - advice

4- We should think carefully of the magnificent inventions instead of taking them for --.

a - gratitude      b - granite      c - granted      d - groom

5- Mr. Ali spent most of his time ----- the lessons which he will explain..

a - prepare      b - preparing      c - to prepare      d - prepared

6- Ahmed Zewail won.....award for his discovery "The femto second"

a - a      b - an      c - the      d - no article

7- The information about the new competition can be seen on the -----

a - noticeboard      b - broad      c - abroad      d - boarding

8- We wouldn't have gone to ( a- an - the - no article) beach if we had known it was so windy

9- My father always tell me ( a - an - the - no article ) valuable advice.

10- Athletics.....us a lot.

a - benefits      b - benefit      c - is benefited      d - have benefited

11- I feel.....and became very angry when I can't find the remote control

a - delighted      b - pleased      c - stressed      d - pressure

12- It is such ( a - an - the - no article ) milk that the child can't drink it

13- The headmaster promised that he would punish the.....who hit his classmate.

a - bully      b - teacher      c - clerk      d - actor

14- My father goes to ( a - an - the - no article ) school .He is a teacher of English.

### 1. Read the passage , then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Every year about two million people visit Mount Rushmore, where the faces of four U.S. presidents were carved in granite by sculptor Gutzon Borglum and his son, the late Lincoln Borglum. The creation of Rushmore Monument took 14 years- from 1927 to 1941- and nearly a million dollars. **These** were times when money was difficult to come by and many people were jobless. To move more than 40,000 tons of rock, Borglum hired laid-off workers from the closed-down mines in the Black Hills area. He taught these men to dynamite, drill, carve and finish the granite. They were hanging in midair in specially devised chairs, which had many safety features. Borglum was proud of the fact that no workers were killed or severely injured during the years of blasting and carving.

During the carving, many changes in the original design had to be made to keep the carved heads free of large fissures that were uncovered. Borglum concocted a mixture of granite dust, white lead and linseed oil to fill them. Every winter, water from melting snow gets into the fissures and expands as it freezes, making the fissures bigger. Consequently, every autumn maintenance work is done to refill the cracks. The repairers fix the monument with the same mixture that Borglum used to preserve this national monument for future generations.

### 1. This passage is mainly about.....

a) the visitors to the mount Rushmore Monument.



- b) the sculptor of the mount Rushmore Monument.
- c) the creation of the mount Rushmore Monument.
- d) how to repair national monuments

2. According to the passage, Borglum's son.....

- a) is dead
- b) was a president
- c) spent a million dollars
- d) was a miner

3. The underlined word "these" refers to the.....

- a) faces
- b) years
- c) workers
- d) dollars

4. The men who Borglum hired were.....

- a) trained sculptors
- b) Black Hills volunteers
- c) unemployed miners
- d) severely injured

5. The underlined word "devised" is synonymous with.....

- a) described
- b) elevated
- c) carved
- d) designed

6. The passage shows that.....

- a) the heads are not as originally planned.
- b) the workers made mistakes when blasting.
- c) the cracks caused serious injuries.
- d) Borglum was not loyal to his presidents.

7. Borglum's mixture for filling cracks was.....

- a) very expensive
- b) bought by the Black Hills miners
- c) invented by the sculptor himself
- d) not used after he died.

Choose the best translation:

1- Citizenship means that all citizens have the same rights and duties.

- أ- المواطنة هي ان يتساوى أبناء الوطن حقوق و ما عليهم من واجبات.
- ب- الوطنية هي ان يتسا أبناء الوطن الواحد فيمقوق و ما عليهم من واجبات .
- ج- المواطنة هي ان يتساوى أبناء الوطن الواحد فيما لهم من حقوق و ما عليهم من ديون .
- د- المواطنة هي ان يتساوى أبناء الوطن الواحد فيما لهم من حقول و ما عليهم من واجبات

2- مما لا شك فيه أن للتلوث آثار سنية على البيئة سواء كان ذلك للآسان أو الحيوان أو النبات .

- a) Doubtless, pollution has nice effects on the environment whether it is man, animal or plant.
- b) Doubtless, pollution has bad affection on the environment whether it is man, animal or plant.
- c) Doubtless .pollution has bad effects on the environment weather it is man, animal or plant.
- d) Doubtless. pollution has bad effects on the environment whether it is man, animal or plant.

5) Write an essay of about 150 words on one only of the following topics:

- . How to choose a true friend

# Unit Five

## Vocabulary

# Communication

By: Mr El Sebaei Atteya

|                       |                   |                         |                        |                     |                |
|-----------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|---------------------|----------------|
| <b>communication</b>  | اتصال             | <b>steal</b>            | يسرق                   | <b>test</b>         | يختبر          |
| <b>The internet</b>   | الانترنت          | <b>information</b>      | معلومات                | <b>completely</b>   | تماما          |
| <b>technology</b>     | تكنولوجيا         | <b>organization</b>     | منظمة                  | <b>space</b>        | فضاء - مسافه   |
| <b>connected</b>      | متصل              | <b>airport</b>          | مطار                   | <b>brilliant</b>    | لامع - ذكي     |
| <b>malware</b>        | برمجيات خبيثة     | <b>power station</b>    | محطة طاقه              | <b>ready</b>        | مستعد          |
| <b>cyberbullying</b>  | التنمر الالكتروني | <b>major</b>            | رئيسي                  | <b>book=reserve</b> | يحجز           |
| <b>scam</b>           | احتيال - غش       | <b>cause</b>            | سبب                    | <b>robot</b>        | انسان الي      |
| <b>downloading</b>    | التحميل من النت   | <b>link</b>             | رابط                   | <b>choose</b>       | يختار          |
| <b>app</b>            | تطبيق             | <b>system</b>           | نظام                   | <b>company</b>      | شركه - صاحبه   |
| <b>security</b>       | الامن             | <b>machine</b>          | اله                    | <b>employment</b>   | وظيفه          |
| <b>smartphone</b>     | تليفون ذكي        | <b>worldwide</b>        | عالميا                 | <b>ring</b>         | يتصل - حلقه    |
| <b>hack</b>           | يخترق             | <b>Communicate with</b> | يتصل ب                 | <b>Focus on</b>     | يركز           |
| <b>phishing</b>       | الاختيال - الخداع | <b>document</b>         | وثيقه                  | <b>article</b>      | مقاله - اداه   |
| <b>uploading</b>      | تحميل للنت        | <b>create</b>           | يخلق - يبدع            | <b>evidence</b>     | دليل           |
| <b>posting photos</b> | نشر صور           | <b>device</b>           | جهاز                   | <b>careful</b>      | حريص           |
| <b>no longer</b>      | لم يعد            | <b>latest</b>           | احدث                   | <b>danger</b>       | خطر            |
| <b>Expert in-on</b>   | خبير في           | <b>message</b>          | رساله                  | <b>credit card</b>  | كارت ائتمان    |
| <b>control</b>        | تحكم - يتحكم      | <b>important</b>        | مهم                    | <b>teenager</b>     | مراهق          |
| <b>heating</b>        | التدفئه           | <b>Similar to</b>       | مشابه ل                | <b>personal</b>     | شخصي           |
| <b>lighting</b>       | الاضاءه           | <b>disadvantage</b>     | عيب                    | <b>details</b>      | تفاصيل         |
| <b>decision</b>       | قرار              | <b>possible</b>         | ممکن                   | <b>delete</b>       | يحذف           |
| <b>criminal</b>       | مجرم              | <b>online</b>           | علي النت               | <b>comment</b>      | تعليق          |
| <b>rubbish bin</b>    | سله زباله         | <b>flexible</b>         | مرن                    | <b>surprised</b>    | مندعش          |
| <b>empty</b>          | فارغ              | <b>arrangement</b>      | اعداد                  | <b>worried</b>      | يقلق           |
| <b>imagine</b>        | يتخيل             | <b>prediction</b>       | تنبؤ                   | <b>password</b>     | لكلمه السر     |
| <b>driverless</b>     | ذاتيه القياده     | <b>Sat nav</b>          | الملاحه بالقمر الصناعي | <b>blog</b>         | مدونه          |
| <b>collect</b>        | يجمع - يحضر       | <b>intention</b>        | نيه                    | <b>bully</b>        | يبطج           |
| <b>electric</b>       | كهربائي           | <b>definitely</b>       | بالتاكيد               | <b>socialise</b>    | يختلط اجتماعيا |
| <b>petrol</b>         | بنزين             | <b>probably</b>         | من المحتمل             | <b>click</b>        | يضغط علي       |
| <b>accident</b>       | حادثه             | <b>advert</b>           | اعلان                  | <b>furious</b>      | غاضب           |
| <b>illegal</b>        | غير قانوني        | <b>introduce</b>        | يقدم                   | <b>account</b>      | حساب           |
| <b>enough</b>         | كافي              | <b>abroad</b>           | الخارج                 | <b>creative</b>     | مبدع           |
| <b>recognise</b>      | يتعرف علي         | <b>possibility</b>      | احتماليه               | <b>take turns</b>   | يتناوب         |
| <b>business</b>       | عمل - شركه        | <b>flying taxis</b>     | التاكسي الطائر         | <b>properly</b>     | بطريق صحيحه    |
| <b>strange</b>        | غريب              | <b>safe</b>             | امن                    | <b>embarrassing</b> | محير - مربك    |
| <b>website</b>        | موقع علي النت     | <b>poster</b>           | ملصق - اعلان           | <b>unkind</b>       | قاسي           |
| <b>anti-virus</b>     | ضد الفيروسات      | <b>add</b>              | يضيف                   | <b>presentation</b> | تقديم          |
| <b>software</b>       | برمجيات           | <b>change</b>           | يغير                   | <b>rude</b>         | وقع            |
| <b>mention</b>        | يذكر              | <b>lock</b>             | يغلق                   | <b>skin</b>         | جلد            |
| <b>suggest</b>        | يقترح             | <b>trick</b>            | يخدع                   | <b>conclude</b>     | يختم           |
| <b>tasks</b>          | مهام              | <b>camp</b>             | معسكر                  | <b>do a survey</b>  | يقوم بدراسه    |
| <b>behaviour</b>      | سلوك              | <b>experience</b>       | خبره                   | <b>do damage</b>    | يسبب تلف       |

## Definitions

|                      |                                                       |           |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| <b>communication</b> | systems to send and receive information               | اتصال     |
| <b>internet</b>      | a worldwide computer network                          | الانترنت  |
| <b>technology</b>    | the use of science to create devices for everyday use | تكنولوجيا |

|                                   |                                                                                                |                            |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>connected</b>                  | when more than one thing is joined or linked                                                   | متصل - مرتبط               |
| <b>anti-virus</b>                 | a software that removes unwanted programs from a computer                                      | ضد الفيروسات               |
| <b>app</b>                        | a computer programme designed to perform / do a specific function.                             | تطبيق                      |
| <b>security</b>                   | to protect a place or person                                                                   | امن                        |
| <b>smartphone</b>                 | a device that can connect to the internet                                                      | تليفون ذكي                 |
| <b>hack</b>                       | when a computer system is broken into illegally                                                | يخترق                      |
| <b>uploading personal details</b> | Copying information such as your address and phone number to the internet.                     | يحمل علي انت معلومات شخصيه |
| <b>downloading malware</b>        | putting software from the internet onto a computer that will damage it.                        | تنزيل من النت              |
| <b>scam</b>                       | a dishonest plan to steal money                                                                | غش - خداع                  |
| <b>sail</b>                       | a piece of material used to control wind power on a ship or a boat.                            | يبحر                       |
| <b>phishing</b>                   | Trying to trick a person by into giving information over the internet to take money from them. | الاختيال - الغش            |
| <b>smartphone</b>                 | A device that can connect to the internet                                                      | تليفون ذكي                 |
| <b>leader</b>                     | The person who controls others                                                                 | قائد                       |
| <b>Kneel down</b>                 | To show respect and need for help.                                                             | يركع                       |
| <b>spade</b>                      | A tool to dig the earth with and make holes.                                                   | جاروف                      |
| <b>cyberbullying</b>              | Sending messages online to frighten or worry someone.                                          | التنمر الالكتروني          |
| <b>Link</b>                       | A connection between two places that allows people to communicate or travel between them.      | رابطة                      |
| <b>posting</b>                    | To send a letter or a hvsphoto to somebody by post / mail                                      | ارسال                      |
| <b>password</b>                   | A secret word that you must use before being allowed to use a computer system.                 | كلمه السر                  |
| <b>uploading</b>                  | To move data to the internet                                                                   | تحميل علي النت             |

## Expressions

|                                |  |                              |  |
|--------------------------------|--|------------------------------|--|
| <b>stay safe</b>               |  | <b>book a ticket</b>         |  |
| <b>on a website</b>            |  | <b>embarrassing photos</b>   |  |
| <b>hack into organisations</b> |  | <b>think carefully about</b> |  |
| <b>worried about</b>           |  | <b>make comments</b>         |  |
| <b>Be joined / Be linked</b>   |  | <b>satellite navigation</b>  |  |
| <b>socialize with</b>          |  | <b>careful about</b>         |  |
| <b>plenty of</b>               |  | <b>In trouble</b>            |  |
| <b>go online</b>               |  | <b>find out</b>              |  |
| <b>anti virus software</b>     |  | <b>in a few years</b>        |  |
| <b>driverless car</b>          |  | <b>Bank account</b>          |  |
| <b>hack into</b>               |  | <b>To my surprise</b>        |  |
| <b>a Worldwide network</b>     |  | <b>Click on a link</b>       |  |
| <b>Be known as</b>             |  | <b>Be surprised by</b>       |  |
| <b>make the decision for</b>   |  | <b>on the phone</b>          |  |

## Derivatives

| Verb            |  | Noun                      |  | Adjective           |  |
|-----------------|--|---------------------------|--|---------------------|--|
| <b>hack</b>     |  | <b>hacker - hacking</b>   |  |                     |  |
| <b>comunica</b> |  | <b>comunication</b>       |  | <b>comunicative</b> |  |
| <b>link</b>     |  | <b>link</b>               |  | <b>linking</b>      |  |
| <b>bully</b>    |  | <b>a bully - bullying</b> |  | .....               |  |







**being bullied**, you should tell the teacher. You can also offer to **help the person tell** their parents. You can **keep a note of any bullying** you see so that you have **plenty of information** to tell your teacher. The teacher can then **talk to the bully about** everything they have done. Be kind to the person who **is being bullied**. Make sure that they know you support them and do not like **the bully's behaviour**. Spend time talking and **socialising with** them to **help them build** new friendships. Invite them to **join your friends**. Agree with your friends that you will make it clear to the bully that you do not like their behaviour.

~~~~~

Reading

Last week, I was playing **online** when I saw **an advert** for a free game. I **clicked on the link** and wrote my name, address and some bank details. When I tried to **download the game** nothing happened. It was **a scam!** My dad was **furious** because they **stole money** from his **bank account** and my computer **stopped working** properly! Don't **click on links** you don't recognise and never give your **personal details on a strange website**. Oh, and remember to use **anti-virus software** to stop thieves!

~~~~~

**Student A:** You are **a teenager**. You have learned at school that the internet isn't always a safe place for young people. Ask your parent for **some advice** about how to **stay safe online**.

**Student B:** You are **a parent** and you want your **teenage son/daughter** to stay safe online. Tell him/her five things he/she can do to stay safe online.

~~~~~

Stay safe on line

Don't add your personal details to a website

DO change your password often

Don't click on a link you don't recognise

DO lock your phone

Do lock your social media accounts

Don't upload embarrassing photos.

Don't save bank details on a website.

Do use anti-virus software.

Do use different passwords on different internet sites.

Don't write unkind comments about other people

Exercises on unit : 5 (Voc.)

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1- Communication is no longer about people talking to one

a - else b - other c - others d - another

2- Speech is the fastest method of between people.

a - communication b - communicative c - connection d - communicate

3- stands for the internet of things.

a - SOS b - USA c - IOT d - UN

4- believe that everyone will be connected to IOT in a few years.

a - Teachers b - Doctors c - Experts d - Engineers

5- is developing so fast.

a - Technology b - A technology c - The technology d - Technological

6- Cars can already connect the internet using smart phones.

a - with b - to c - of d - on

7- The word **smart** is the **synonym** of

a - stupidity b - fool c - intelligence d - foolish

8- is a device that can connect to the internet.

a - Smartphone b - A mixer c - A radio d - An Axe

9- A car is driven electronically without a human driver.

a - cart b - ambulance c - driverless d - carriage

10- The on my mobile help me to choose what I want.

a - photos b - apps c - pictures d - images

- 11- I will drive to the school to the children.
a - correct b - connect c - contact d - collect
- 12- All the driverless cars will be
a - electrical b - electrician c - electric d - electricity
- 13- The electric car will be good the environment as it causes no pollution.
a - to b - at c - for d - against
- 14- The electric car is cleaner than petrol ones.
a - few b - much c - more d - many
- 15- Experts believe that our roads will be as there'll be fewer accidents.
a - more dangerous b - dangerous c - save d - safer
- 16- Many people don't think IOT is safe enough
a - already b - yet c - not d - never
- 17- Computers information about people and businesses
a - collect b - commit c - connect d - comet
- 18- Internet Criminals into organisations like hospitals, airports and power stations.
a - hijack b - hate c - hack d - lack
- 19- Criminals major security problems to these organisations.
a - reason b - cause c - save d - relieve
- 20- is the use of science to create devices for everyday use.
a - Tourism b - Terrorism c - Technology d - Biology
- 21- When more than one thing is joined or linked means
a - connected b - collected c - corrected d - offline
- 22- The internet is a worldwide computer
a - work b - wires c - ropes d - network
- 23- An is a computer programme.
a - app b - apparatus c - appearance d - parrot
- 24- To is when a computer system is broken into illegally.
a - hide b - hack c - pack d - lake
- 25- Egypt is well-known for its safety and
a - secure b - safe c - security d - secretive
- 26- I have a cool new that helps me learn English words on my smart phone.
a - internet b - technical c - image d - app
- 27- Oh no, someone has tried to into my new computer.
a - connect b - hook c - hack d - hit
- 28- with my friends is really important to me.
a - Communication b - Security c - Connect d - Safety
- 29- Leila's parents have bought her all the latest : a computer, a mobile and a tablet.
a - communication b - technology c - connection d - safety
- 30- Look at this; this company is going to introduce a flexible mobile.
a - advert b - advertise c - advantage d - addition
- 31- are the people who hurt or cause problem to the internet users.
a - Cyberbullying b - Cyper-cafe c - Cyper-net d - Spiderman
- 32- There is a good song on the internet. It needs
a - uploading b - downloading c - overloading d - loading
- 33- Teenagers are not always careful about their personal details.
a - downloading b - loading c - uploading d - overloading
- 34- My computer begins to restart by itself. I think it is harmed by a
a - ware b - worms c - insects d - malware
- 35- is tricking people by getting them to give their identity, bank account numbers ,etc
a - Phishing b - Fishing c - Surfing d - Revising
- 36- The post office is on your way , this letter form me , please.
a - post b - posting c - past d - supposing
- 37- When I use the internet, I find adverts asking for personal details. It's
a - scans b - scars c - scams d - spans
- 38- You shouldn't upload your details on websites you don't trust.
a - public b - unimportant c - trivial d - personal
- 39- You should use a strong which can't be discovered easily.
a - password b - passport c - pass way d - keyword

- 40- To protect your computer, you should have a strong virus software.
a - aunt b - anti- c - embarrassing d - onto
- 41- I sometimes pay for my goods using my card.
a - cheque b - cash c - credit d - carrot
- 42- Don't annoy your facebook friends and your should be polite.
a - comments b - letters c - paragraphs d - essays
- 43- It was a scam so my dad was furious because they stole money from his bank
a - office b - manager c - account d - count
- 44- I chat with my friends on the internet when they are
a - in line b - by line c - offline d - online
- 45- Is it difficult to anything from the internet?
a - delete b - add c - upload d - post
- 46- I am ashamed because she has put me in an situation.
a - nice b - good c - embarrassing d - remarkable
- 48- my opinion, we can find a solution to the internet problems.
a - In b - For c - On d - With
- 49- My friend works as a officer in Sinai.
a - secretary b - security c - squad d - safe
- 50- The antonym of online is
a - upload b - offline c - download d - of line
- 51- I use my mobile to be to the internet.
a - contacted b - communicated c - connected d - connection
- 52- The protects the computer from malware and other viruses.
a - Air bag b - engine c - dashboard d - ant-virus
- 53- While driving, I can know directions easily in a foreign city with the help of my
a - smart phone b - steering wheel c - gauge d - pedal
- 54- There should be any kind of between you and your relatives.
a - conservation b - condensation c - communication d - pollution
- 55- The people who into important organisations are criminals.
a - take b - look c - enter d - hack
- 56- It is important to memorize your user name and your to log into your sites.
a - name b - password c - surname d - nickname
- 59- You can't send any emails unless the computer is.....to the internet.
a) communicated b) connected c) constructed d) contacted
- 60- I have new on my smartphone which helps me practise foreign languages.
a) caps b) apes c) abs d) apps
- 61- A uniformed.....man met them at the gate and asked for their identity cards.
a) priority b) business c) security d) minority
- 62- We need to bring in a/an.....to deal with this problem because it's very complex.
a) criminal b) expert c) painter d) employer
- 63- Modern.....are enabling more people to work from home.
a) internet b) hacks c) contacts d) communications
- 64- Modern.....makes transferring money much easier than it used to be.
a) technology b) hack c) experience d) heating
- 65- A company can.....its private information as it is confidential to the business
a) protect b) connect c) addict d) communicate
- 66- The official our passports before we boarded the plane.
a) looked b) researched c) checked d) booked
- 67- One of the advantages of this job is the working..... hours.
a) rough b) tough c) strict d) flexible
- 68- In our company, there is good between the various departments..
a) convention b) conduct c) contract d) communication
- 69- My father has been searching.....for cheap flights.
a) in line b) on the line c) online d) offline
- 70- Orangutans prefer to live.....the branches of trees.
a) out b) on c) of d) off
- 71- Somebody hacked.....the company's central database and knew all our secret information.
a) onto b) in c) to d) into

72- The word "sat nav" is short for satellite.....

- a) navigation b) navy c) naval d) nave

73- This room has under floor heating, isn't it wonderful? The antonym of the word "heating" is.....

- a) warming b) cooling c) signing d) deleting

74- My friend has some.....in fashion design. He is a great designer.

- a) experiences b) experience c) experiment d) expert

75-El There is a 25% discount on all.....goods until the end of the week.

- a) electrifying b) electrician c) electrical d) electricity

76- We couldn't go.....last weekend because the weather was awful.

- a) developing b) heating c) lightening d) camping

77- A car park camera captured the attack.

- a) priority b) business c) security d) obesity

78- The power failure.....the whole computer system to shut down.

- a) caused b) made c) persuaded d) let

79- The loan willSamy to buy the house.

- a) able b) capable c) enable d) disable

80- Nothing could be more important.....me than my family.

- a) from b) to c) of d) at

81- The company information about consumer trends

- a) contacts b) conducts c) connects d) collects

82- Someone broke.....my car and stole my laptop.

- a) into b) onto c) from d) at

83-My decision to leave school when I was only 15 was the worst mistake I ever

- a) put b) gave c) made d) did

84-Have you read about thedevelopment in computers?

- a- latter b- later c- least d- latest

85- Don't go near the edge as it isn't safe. The antonym of the word "safe" is..

- a) clear b) advance c) administer d) insecure

86- There must have been.....40,000 people in the stadium.

- a) around b) round c) record d) surround

87- The new factory is expected to.....more than 400 new jobs.

- a) control b) steal c) develop d) create

88-You need to update your software regularly to look for and remove viruses on your computer.

- a) malware b) antivirus c) antibiotic d) antibodies

89- Teenagers are not always careful about----- their personal details

- a - downloading b - loading c - uploading d - overloading

90.....is an attempt to trick someone who has an internet bank account to take money out of their account.

- a) Downloading b) Phishing c) Locking d) Uploading

91- Choose the image you want by.....twice on it.

- a) clicking b) downloading c) uploading d) selecting

92-.....is sending messages online to frighten or worry someone.

- a) Downloading b) Clicking c) Uploading d)Cyberbullying

93-The Sunday papers are full of for cars..

- a) advertisements b) experiences c) accounts d) novels

94. I am ashamed because she has put me in ansituation

- a) excited b) embarrassing c) possible d) scary

95. My friend couldn't me after I had put on a lot of weight.

- a. realize b. organize c. recognize d. sterilize

96. I read people's blogs and makeon what they write.

- a. contacts b. connections c. comments d. commands

97. We all.....our colleague Adel to overcome his serious disease.

- a) support b) follow c) give d)let

98-His mother was with him for leaving the baby alone in the house

- a) careful b) funny c) excited d) furious

99-Lock the door when you leave. The verb "lock" is the synonym of.....

- a) open b)mix c)shut d) shire

100- Do you remember any funny stories about work? The word "funny" is the antonym Of

a) comical b) serious c) humorous d) attractive

101. The social networking help people to communicate with each other

a. side b. sight c. site d. sightseeing

1- Choose the Two (2) correct answers out of the Five (5) options given:

1. Security is toas lock is to open.

a. insecurity b. danger c. safety d. peace e. defense

2. "I haven't expected my recent book to be so successful." The word "recent" can be replaced by.....

a. contemporary b. first c. former d. old e. novel

3. Scam is to..... as book is to reserve.

a. fried b. trick c. trust d. fraud e. scan

4. "I have just uploaded a video." In this sentence, the word 'uploaded' is

a. unloaded b. overloaded c. downloaded d. transferred e. transmit

5. "The sun rose to a clear morning." The word 'clear' can be replaced by.....

a. bright b. cloudless c. cloudy d. pour e. pure

6. The answer to this question is clear." The word 'clear' is antonymous with....

a. vague b. cloudy c. sunny d. unclear e. obvious

7. Hate is to..... as grown-ups is to adults.

a. love b. like c. detest d. admire e. loath

8. We should lock our houses well when we go to sleep. The synonym of lock are.....

a. mix b. open c. shut d. close e. hire

9. We should be careful when we use new sets. The word careful are similar to.....

a. careless b. cautious c. raging d. pleasant e. accurate

10. We should be careful not to be deceived by a.....or.....on the internet.

a. scam b. robber c. fraud d. truth e. scan

Grammar

FUTURE FORMS AND TENSES أشكال و أزمنة المستقبل

1) WILL + INF.

١- تستخدم (Will) للتنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلا في حالة عدم وجود دليل

- I expect she **will get a good job** soon. - I think it **will rain** tomorrow..

- I expect Egypt **will achieve** progress in all fields.. - I think Ali **will buy** the computer.

٢- تستخدم أيضا للتعبير عن الحقائق المستقبلية

- This school **will be 50 years** old next year - I am 18. Next year, I **will be** 19 years old.

٣- كما تستخدم لاتخاذ قرار سريع بعمل شيء ما

- Someone's at the door. **I'll see** who it is - I'm hungry. I think I **will have** a sandwich..

- That's the phone. I **will answer** it.

لاحظ أيضا ان اتخاذ القرارات السريسه تأخذ مستقبل بسيط وليس (going to)

- I have decided now that I (**will-am-going-to**) travel to Cairo

٤- عند عرض عمل شيء أو تقديم خدمة ما

- **I'll wash** the dishes

- **I'll fix** the car for you.

٥- عندما نطلب من شخص عمل شيء

- **Will you help** me carry this bag, please?

- **I hope you will look** after the baby.

٦- الترتيب لعمل شيء وقت الحديث دون تخطيط مسبق

- **I will meet** my friends this evening.

٧- عمل الوعود والتهديدات

- **I'll buy** you a computer when you **pass** the final exam.

- You **won't get** your prize if you **come** late.

8- كما يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل بعد أدوات الربط الزمنية و أدوات الشرط

يستخدم بعد
الروابط الاتية :

After/ As soon as/ When / Before /once By the time	(مضارع بسيط) او (مضارع تام)	مستقبل + Will+ inf
+ will (won't) + فاعل مصدر مصدر / don't مصدر	Till/until	(مضارع بسيط) او (مضارع تام) (

I **won't be able to write** the report until **I've done** the research.

Once I've done the research, **I'll start** the report.

-Normal people **won't travel** in space until it **has become** less expensive.

-People **won't buy** electric cars until they **have discovered** a way for them to go longer distances without being charged.

- When **I've fixed** my computer, **I'll help** you with your research.

- **As soon as/When** Ali **gets** home, he **will have** dinner

-He **won't leave** until his sister **arrives/has arrived**

-**Don't press** this button until the light **turns** green.

9-توزيع الوظائف و المهام والادوار (بين المتحدث و افراد اخرين

* You sweep the floor and I **will cook** the dinner.

* You do the typing and I **will check** it later.

ه. الكلمات الدالة

-نستخدم will بعد الافعال والظروف والتعبيرات الاتية :

predict-expect -hope- think – believe – promise – wonder – suppose Probably-possibly- certainly- perhaps – maybe – Be sure –be afraid –it is probable –it's certain –it's possible- I don't think	افعال ظروف تعبيرات
tomorrow - next (week/month/year) – in the future - soon - in 2030 -	كلمات

2) FUTURE CONTINUOUS

المستقبل المستمر

Form : **will be + v.ing**

- **This time next week, I will be travelling** to Cairo.

- **Don't ring at 8 o'clock. I'll be having** dinner with my family.

- You'll recognize me when you get there. **I'll be wearing** jeans and a white t-shirt.

I'll be sitting at a table at the corner and reading a newspaper.

١- يستخدم المستقبل المستمر للتنبؤ بحدث سوف يكون مستمرا في وقت ما أو خلال فترة محددة في المستقبل

- **I'll be playing** tennis from 7 to 9 p.m.

- The government **will be trying** to reduce the effects of climate change.

٢- كما يستخدم المستقبل المستمر للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمرا عندما يقطعه حدث آخر أو عندما يتم حدث آخر في المستقبل. (تقاطع)

- **I will be waiting** for you when your bus arrives.

- **I'll be staying** at Madison Hotel, if anything *happens* and you *need* to contact me.

- **He will be studying** at the library tonight, so he will not see Ola when she *arrives*.

٣- كما يستخدم المستقبل المستمر للتعبير عن حدثين سوف يكونان مستمران معا في نفس الوقت في المستقبل. (توازي)

- At the party tomorrow, Ahmed **will be singing** while Sarah **will be dancing**.

I **will be working** hard next week **while** you **will be relaxing** on the beach.

٤- يستخدم المستقبل المستمر أيضا عندما نخمن ما يفعله شخص الآن

- Don't call him now, **he'll be doing** his homework.

- I don't want to disturb them. I'm sure they **'ll be cleaning** their house at the moment.

٥- لا يستخدم المستقبل المستمر مع الأفعال التي تعبر عن حالة (أفعال الحواس والادراك والفهم) (----).

- Maher **will be** at my house when **you arrive**. (Not: ~~will be being~~)

- **After I study**, I **will know** all the answers for the test. (Not: ~~will be knowing~~)

MAY BE + V.ING

- يستخدم (may be v.ing) للتعبير عن أحداث محتملة الحدوث (أحداث غير مؤكدة) ستكون مستمرة في المستقبل

- I can't visit you because I **will / may be doing** my homework this evening.

- In 100 years, people **may be living** in space.

- When she's 21, she **may be working** in London.

3) THE FUTURE PERFECT

المستقبل التام

١- يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد انتهى أو تم قبل وقت معين في المستقبل

- By the end of next year, the government **will have built** a new school in the village.

- The population of the world **will have grown** to about nine billion to by 2050?

- They **will have finished** the English course in two months' time.

٢- يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد انتهى أو تم قبل حدث آخر في المستقبل

- Before they come, we **will have cleaned** up the house.

- John **will have eaten** the whole cake, by the time the birthday party starts

٣- يستخدم المستقبل التام مع تعبيرات زمنية مثل:

- In (a year's / four months' / five weeks' / an hour's / ten minutes' /.....) time

- By next Monday / by 2025 etc.)

- Before (four o'clock / tomorrow morning / next Monday.... etc.)

- By next Wednesday, I **will have done** a science test.

- **By the time** I am twenty-two, I **will have finished** my university degree.

(**will have been + pp**)

٤- يتكون المستقبل التام في المبني للمجهول من

- This school **will have been built** by 2030.

4) BE + GOING TO + INF.

١- تستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن أحداث تم اتخاذ قرار بشأنها من قبل.

- A: What are **your plans** for the next weekend? - B: **I'm going to play** computer games.

٢- التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلا في حالة وجود دليل. نראה أو نعرفه أو نسمعه مع كلمات believe/ /think

- The other team's players are very big. **It's going to be** a difficult match.

- I think **it's going to rain** because the sky seems very cloudy.

- There are a lot of clouds. I think It **is going to rain**.

- Look at this reckless driver! He **is going to crash** into the car in front.

- Hassan's playing really well. **He 's going to win** the game!

- It's near the end and it's 3-0 for Egypt. We **are going to win the game!**

-It's six a.m. and it's already 25°C. It **is going to be very hot today**

/ take care /look!/ watch out ! /lookout!: ولكن الصافات الثابتة والمهارات للانسان ليس دليلا على حدوث الفعل فناخذ
- Watch out!

- **Watch out!** The baby **is going to** fall.

-How pale **that girl is!** **I believe / I think/ she is going to faint**

-He can't swim. He is going to drown.

Will ولكن الصافات الثابتة والمهارات للانسان ليس دليلا على حدوث الفعل فناخذ

E.g.1- Messi is **a clever player**. I think he **will score** a goal the next match.

2- Hamdi is very fast. I think **he will be** in the Olympic Games one day!

3- Sara is **a good student** .I think she **will pass** all her exams.

ولكن لاحظ المواقف المؤقتة تعتبر ادلة واضحة

* My brother is revising well. I think he's going to pass the test.

3-يستخدم عند وجود كلمات (made up...mind intend /intention/plan /decide/ made decision/)

Ex- A: What are your **plans** for the next weekend?

- B: **I'm going to play** computer games.

5) THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS المضارع المستمر

(am / is / are + v.ing)

1- يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل في حالة وجود ترتيبات مسبقة ، ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل

arranged /made arrangements / prepared / booked /packed reserved / got / bought

e.g. - He has **arranged** everything. **He's spending his holiday in Paris**.

They **are flying to** Paris next Friday. They **bought the tickets**

- لاحظ أن المناسبات الاجتماعية من حفلات وأعياد ميلاد وغيرها تستلزم ترتيبات ، لذا يستخدم معها
المضارع المستمر

- **He's getting married** next Friday.

2-يستخدم مع المناسبات الاجتماعية من حفلات وأعياد ميلاد والزواج وسفر وزيارات ومواعيد شخصية
وغیرها تستلزم ترتيبات

e.g. **He's getting married** next Friday. We **are giving a party** tomorrow for Ali's birthday.

The school inspector **is coming** on Thursday.

3- يستخدم المضارع المستمر مع هذه الافعال التي تستلزم ترتيبات

a party leave/(have/give) /go /come/ visit=see /meet/ travel /see/ stay/fly /arrive)

- I'm meeting them on Saturday.

- They're going tomorrow.

I'm doing a test next Monday. Our class is visiting a museum tomorrow

-We're eating dinner in the restaurant carriage this evening

6) THE PRESENT SIMPLE

المضارع البسيط

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل بجدول مواعيد ثابتة : وسائل المواصلات و المسرح و السينما
و المدرسةالخ

- The train **leaves** at six o'clock tomorrow.

- The night programme of the cinema **starts** at 12 am.

Mr El Sebaei Exercises on Grammar تمارين الوحدة الثالثة Mr El Sebaei

1-It's arranged. We (will go - go - are going - may go) to the Red Sea this summer.

2-I think my cousin (will study - studies - going to study - would study) engineering.

3-(Are you playing - Do you play - Shall you play - Do you go to play) tennis after school today?

4-My German lesson (is stating - starts - has been starting - start) at four o'clock this afternoon.

- 5-The launch of the satellite (is being - are being - is - was) at 7.50 tomorrow.
- 6-We (will - may - are going to - are) probably be there for two weeks.
- 7-I can't talk at the moment. I (do - will do - am doing - have done) my homework.
- 8-I can't meet you this afternoon. I (am doing - do - have done - may do) the shopping.
- 9-Hello, Ahmed. I (go - am going - have gone - would have gone) to the airport in a minute.
- 10-My plane (is leaving - shall leave - leave - leaves) at 10 o'clock tomorrow.
- 11-I am studying medicine. I (may be - am going to be - am being - be) a doctor.
- 12-She (will - should - is going to - may) probably do the shopping tomorrow.
- 13-I expect that he (wins - will win - is going to win - is winning) the match.
- 14-Perhaps they (are visiting - are going to visit - will visit - may) visit us next Saturday.
- 15-Somebody is knocking on the door. I (am going - will go - have gone - go) and open it.
- 16-She (is flying - flies - fly - would fly) to Spain next Monday. Everything is arranged.
- 17- I (am going to play - play -will play - should play) tennis with a friend. That's my plan.
- 18-He drives at breakneck speed. He (has - will have - is going to have - is having) an accident.
- 19-Watch out! You (are dropping - drop - are going to drop - would drop) the glasses.
- 20-(Will you - Are you going to - Do you - Should you) help me with this heavy bag, please?
- 21-Don't worry. I (lend - am lending - will lend - should lend) you the money you need.
- 22-I (am going to be - will be - am being - be) 25 next Monday.
- 23-I can't see you tomorrow. I (am meeting - meet - am going to meet - will meet) my cousin.
- 24-Don't phone me at 8.00 a.m. tomorrow. I..... the kids to school then.
a) drive b) will be driving c) have driven d) would drive
- 25-Look at those black clouds. It (rains - is raining - is going to rain - isn't raining).
- 26-She (will - should - might - ought) probably be a great success.
- 27-She has decided that she (is studying - is going to study - was studying - will be studying)
- 28-Be careful! You (will spill - are spilling - are going to spill - spill) your coffee.
- 29-That's the phone. I (answer - am answering - would answer - will answer) it.
- 30- By ten o'clock tonight, I (finish - am finishing - will finish -'ll have finished) all my homework.
- 31.We can't use classroom 5 tomorrow as they (will paint- will have painted-are painting- paint) the walls
- 32-It is very hot in the house. I (am turning -turn- will turn - am going to turn) on the air conditioner!
- 33-A lot of people are waiting for the museum to open. It (will be- is-was- is being) busy today
- 34.Your bags look heavy. I (will help-am helping-help-will be helping) you to carry them.
- 35.The teacher says that we (study-are studying-are going to study) relative clauses next week.
- 36.My grandfather (is being- will be-is going to- wil have been) 70 on his next birthday!
37. I'll call you when I (arrive- arrives- will arrive-am arriving) at my hotel.
- 38- The bridge (will be built- will have been built- will build) across the river by next January.
- 39- When you get off the train, I (are waiting- will have waited- will be waiting) for you by the ticket machine.
- 40- By 2030, scientists will (have invented-invent-be inventing) glasses on which we watch videos.
- 41- In 2030. we will (wear-be wearing-be worn- have worn) the same clothes.
- 42- Don't come round at six o'clock. I will still (do- doing-have done-e doing) my homework.
- 43- I'm sure you (spend-will spend-are spending-will have spent) a lovely time in Italy next year.
- 45- My sister is pregnant. She (is going to have- will have had- will have- will be having) a baby.
- 46-Don't be late , the bus At exactly ten o'clock.
a- Leaves b- going to leave c- has left d- left
- 47- It's 35 degrees and it's only 7 a.m. It very hot today.
a was b is going to be c is being d will be
- 48- Theya party next week. Everything is arranged.
a. have b. are having c. are going to have d. have had
- 49-Our last lesson at two o'clock this afternoon.

- a-is finishing b-will finish c-finishes d-going to finish
- 50- There are a lot of people in the room. It..... difficult to find a chair.
a-is b-will be c-is going to be d- will have been
- 51-Look, there's a sandstorm. I the windows.
a-will close b-close c-am going to close d-am closing
- 52-There are no clouds in the sky today. I think that it..... very hot.
a- is going to be b- will be c- is being d- is
- 53- I feel terrible with a severe stomach. I think I..... be sick.
a should b am going to c am to d. will
- 54- We married next month. Would you like to come to the wedding?
a-will have got b-are getting c-will get d-got
- 55- I think it be hot tomorrow.
a is b is going to c will be d going to
- 56- Hework in an hour. He has arranged it with his boss.
a. is leaving b. is going to leave c. will leave d. leaves
57. The film at 7.30 this evening.
a- starts b- will start c- started d- is starting
- 58- She.....an engineer when she leaves university. That is her plan,
a- will become b- has become c- is going to become d- becomes
- 59- Someone's at the door. I.....who it is
a- am seeing b- will see c- am going to see d- see
60. There's a book club meeting after school and everyone.....there.
a) is going to go b) will go c) are going to go d) goes
61. The train to Cairo is on platform four and itin thirty minutes.
a) is leaving b) will be leaving c) leaves d) will leave
62. We.....a family party on Saturday. Would you like to come?
a) will have b) going to have c) are having d) have
- 63-Take your umbrella with you or you wet.
a) get b) will get c) are getting d) would get
64. He hasn't studied hard. I think he.....this exam.
a- will fail b- fails c- is going to fail d- failed
65. I expect Ahmedthrough his exams.
a- is getting b- is going to get c- will get d- would get
66. Go and see that film. I'm sure that you.....it.
a- will enjoy b- are enjoying c- are going to enjoy d- enjoy
67. Look out! The rock is loose. It.....on your head.
a- is going to fall b- will fall c- is falling d- falls
68. I think it rain because the sky is really dark.
a) is going to rain b) is raining c) rains d) will rain
69. The earth is very crowded. People.....on the moon.
a. are living b. will live c. live d. are going to live
70. Watch out! The baby
a. will fall b. is falling c. is going to fall d. will be fallen
- 71- I'm sure the match.....really exciting.
a. will be b. is being c. is going to be d. would be
- 72- I've have decided that Ipart in the next competition.
a. going to take b. will take c. am taking d. take
- 73.Drive faster! If you don't hurry up, she..... the baby by the time we get to the hospital.
a) will have b) will have had c) will be having d) is having
- 74.The mechanicrepairing your car by the end of the week.
a) will finish b) will have finished c) will be finishing d) is finishing
- 75.We studying this book by the end of this year.
a) finish b) will be finishing c) will have finished d) are finishing
- 76.Tomorrow we're playing tennis from 3 o'clock until 4.30. So at 4 o'clock, we..... tennis.
a) are playing b) will be playing c) will have played d) played

77. Tomorrow we're playing tennis from 3 o'clock until 4.30. So at 5 o'clock, we..... tennis.
 a) are playing b) will be playing c) will have played d) played
78. I predict that in the future mobile phones..... much smaller.
 a) were b) are going to be c) are d) will be
79. I'm going on holiday on Saturday. This time next week I..... on a beach.
 a) am going to lie b) am lying c) will lie d) will be lying
80. At one o'clock tomorrow, I..... lunch with my friends.
 a) was eating b) eating c) will be eating d) ate
81. By ten o'clock tonight, I..... all my homework.
 a) will do b) will have done c) do d) will be doing
82. Let's eat dinner when John..... here.
 a) gets b) will get c) will have get d) get
83. Experts think that Cairo by more than half a million people next year.
 a) will grow b) will have grown c) will be growing d) grows
84. I'm going to the airport in a minute. My plane at ten o'clock.
 a) leave b) is leaving c) leaves d) will leave
85. Wake me up by nine o'clock - I..... long enough by then.
 a) will sleep b) have slept c) will be sleeping d) will have slept
86. Look, I can give you a lift to the station because I..... that way anyway.
 a) won't drive b) will have driven c) drives d) will be driving
87. My family me out today for passing my exams.
 a) are taking b) take c) will take d) had taken
88. My brother Karim law at Cairo University next year.
 a) has studied b) will study c) is going to study d) will have studied
89. By the time my brother is 30, he a successful lawyer!
 a) is becoming b) becomes c) will have become d) has become
90. In the future, computers..... traditional books.
 a) will replace b) will be replaced c) will be replacing d) will be replaced
91. In the future most of our work by machines.
 a) will be doing b) has been done c) will be d) will be done
92. By the time we get to the stadium. The match.....
 a) will have started b) was starting c) is starting d) had started
93. In the future, every new book will probably be..... as an e-book.
 a) publish b) publishing c) published d) publishes
94. We hope that the road..... early morning traffic.
 a) is reducing b) will have been reduced c) will be reduced d) will reduce
95. She's going to look for a job as soon as she in London.
 a) arrive b) have arrive d c) will arrive d) arrives
96. There won't be anyone in the office. Everyone..... home.
 a) will be going b) will have gone c) go d) have gone
97. This time tomorrow, we'll be celebrating because we our exams.
 a) will finish b) will have finished c) will be finishing d) are finishing
98. By the time you get home, I..... the house from top to bottom.
 a) will clean b) will be cleaning c) will have cleaned d) am cleaning
99. I expect that Zamalik the league. They have the best players and trainer in Egypt.
 a) win b) are going to win c) will win d) are winning

100. -For being strong-minded, she..... easily.

a- won't persuade b - won't be persuaded c- isn't going to persuade d - is being persuaded

101. "Leave my house now or I'll call the police!" shouted the lady to the man. This means.....

- a. The lady threatened to call the police if the man didn't leave her house.
 b. The lady said that she would call the police if the man didn't leave her house.
 c. The lady told the man that she would call the police if he didn't leave her house.
 d. The lady informed the man that she would call the police if he didn't leave her house.

102. It takes Mr. Ali 15 minutes to get to the field. This means.....

- a. Mr. All wastes 15 minutes on the way to the field
 b. Mr. Ali spends fifteen minutes getting to the field.
 c. Fifteen minutes is too short for Mr. Ali to get to the field
 d. Mr. Ali leaves the house at a quarter to five and arrives in the field at 5.30

103. It's possible that we won't go camping this week This means.....

- a. We may not go camping this weekend b. We will not go camping this weekend
 c. We must not go camping this weekend d. We will probably go camping this weekend.

104. Which of the following is structurally correct?

- A. When I had finished work, I will travel to Ismailia.
 B. When I have finished work, I will travel to Ismailia.
 C. When I have finished work, I travelled to Ismailia
 D. When I finished work, I will travel to Ismailia.

105- Which of the following is correct ?

- a. While you are checking the report I will fix the printer.
 b. While you are checking the report, I fixed the printer.
 c. While you checked the report, I will fix the printer.
 d. While you are checking the report, I will fix the printer.

106- "My father will call you as soon as his guests have left". This means that.....

- a. the guests have left b. the guests haven't left you
 c. the guests had left d. the guests won't leave

107- "Omar will go back to work once he has got better". This means

- a. he has already got better. b. he isn't supposed to get better.
 c. he is still unwell. d. he has gone back to work.

Time for skills

Choose the best translation:

ينبغي أن نشجع الشباب على ممارسة الرياضة لمساعدتهم على قضاء وقت فراغهم

1. We should discourage young people to practice sports to help them spend their free time.
 2. We should not encourage young people to practice sports to help them spend their free time.
 3. We should encourage young people to practice sports to help them spend their free time.
 4. We should encourage old people to practice sports to help them spend their free time.

2- مشكلة نقص الماء أحد أهم المشكلات التي تواجه بلدنا الفترة الحالية ونحاول الحكومة حلها.

- a- Water lack is one of the most important problems that forces our country these days and the government had tried to solve it.
 b- Water shortage is one of the most important problems that faces our continent nowadays and the government will try to solve it.
 c- Water lack is one of the most important problems that support our country those day and the government tried to solve it.
 d- Water shortage is one of the most important problems that faces our country nowadays and the government tries to solve it.

3 يقدم العلماء الجديد كل يوم لخدمة البشرية، لذلك فنحن جميعا مدينون لهم بالكثير من الفضل.

- a- Every day new scholars provide service to humanity, so we owe them a lot of credit.
 b- Every day scientists provide service to humanity, so we owe them a lot of credit.
 c- Everyday scientists provide service to humanity, so we owe them a lot of credit.
 d- Every day scientists provide service to humanity, so we all own them a lot of credit.

Choose the best translation:

1. All living creatures need to cooperate in order to achieve their goals. Teamwork, which means the ability of a group to work together, is something we cannot do without. Teamwork, together with tolerance, is essential for the success of any project.

- ١- تحتاج الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقيق أهدافها فالعمل الجماعي والذي يعنى قدرة الجماعة على العمل مع بعضها ما هي الاشياء يمكن العمل بدونه . العمل الجماعي و التسامح ضروري للنجاح فى كل المشاريع.
 ٢- تحتاج الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقيق أهدافها فالعمل المجتمعي والذي يعنى قدرة الجماعة على العمل مع بعضها ما هي الاشياء لا يمكن العمل بدونه . العمل الجماعي مع التسامح ضروري للنجاح فى أى مشروع.

- ٣-تحتاج الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقيق أهدافها فالعمل الجماعي والذي يعنى قدرة الجماعة على العمل مع بعضها ما هى الاشياء لا يمكن العمل بدونه . العمل الجماعي بدون التسامح ضروري للنجاح فى أى مشروع.
- ٤-تحتاج الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقيق أهدافها فالعمل الجماعي والذي يعنى قدرة الجماعة على العمل مع بعضها ما هى الاشياء لا يمكن العمل بدونه . العمل الجماعي مع التسامح ضروري للنجاح فى أى مشروع.

2- When you buy food, buy it from a reliable restaurant, where you know that you can count on your food being tasty and healthy.

- أ- عندما اشتريت طعام، اشتريته من مطعم موثوق به، حيثما تستطيع أن تثق أن طعامك سيكون حسن الطعم وصحي.
- ب- وقتما تشتري طعام، فلتشتريه من مطعم معروف، لكي تستطيع أن تتأكد أن طعامك سيكون حسن المظهر وصحي.
- ج- عندما تشتري طعام، فلتشتريه من مطعم موثوق به، حيثما تستطيع أن تثق أن طعامك سيكون لذيذ وصحي.
- د- كلما تشتري طعام، اشتريه من مطعم ذو سمعة طيبة، حيثما تستطيع أن تثق أن طعامك سيكون متميز وصحي.

3- Most people agree that there is no place like home. It is more than just a place to stay in. It is part one's life and personality.

- أ- يتفق معظم الناس أنه لا يوجد مكان مثل الوطن. فهو أكثر من كونه مكان لتمكث فيه. فهو جزء من حياة الواحد وشخصيته.
- ب- يتفق معظم الناس أنه لا يوجد مكان مثل المنزل. فهو أكثر من كونه مكان للإقامة فيه. فهو جزء من حياة الفرد وشخصيته.
- ج- دائما يتفق معظم الناس أن يوجد مكان مثل الوطن. فهو أكبر من كونه مكان لتحمي فيه. فهو جزء من حياة الواحد وشخصيته.
- د- لقد اتفق معظم الناس دائما أن يوجد مكان مثل المنزل. فهو أكثر من كونه مكان لتحمي فيه. فهو جزء من حياة الفرد وشخصيته.

Test Five

1- Choose the Two (2) correct answers out of the Five (5) options given:

- 1.Security is kept by the police . " Security is the antonym of.....
- a. risky b. danger c. hunger d. harm e. safety
- 2.The internet has a lot of advantages and some disadvantages. " Advantages and disadvantages means.....
- a. merits and demerits b. gains and loses c. pros and cons d. help and aid e. security and danger

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- While driving, I can know directions easily in a foreign city with the help of my -----
- a) smart phone b) steering wheel c) gauge d) pedal
- 2-There should be any kind of.....between you and your relatives.
- a) conservation b) condensation c) communication d) pollution
- 3- The people who.....into important organisations are criminal.
- a) take b) look c) enter d) hack
- 4- It is important to memorize your user name and your..... to log into your sites.
- a) name b) password c) surname d) nickname
- 5- I think it.....rain because the sky is really dark.
- a) is going to rain b) is raining c) rains d) will rain
- 6-Take your umbrella with you or you.....wet.
- a) get b) will get c) are getting d) would get
- 7- My new car has satellite (navigate – navigation – radiation- aviation) system.
- 8-My friend works as a ----- officer in Sinai ..
- a) secretary b) security c) squad d) safe
- 9- The antonym of online is(upload -online -download -out of line)
- 10- I use my mobile to be.....to the internet .
- a) contacted b) communicated c) connected d) connection
- 11- By next September ,my brother----- .
- a) will marry b) will have married c) is marrying d) is going to marry .
- 12- This time tomorrow we our lessons
- a) will study b) study c) will be studying d) are going to study .
- 13-The other team is training hard .They to win the match.
- a) will win b) is winning c) wins d) is going to win.
- 14-The plane the airportat 10.30 next Friday .
- a) leaves b) is leaving c) is going to leave d) will leave

2) Read the followings then answer the questions(8M)

People have been writing about strange worlds and travelling to space for thousands of years. Parts of the famous Arabic story "One Thousand and One Nights" might be described as a kind of science fiction. But science really started to influence how we all lived in the nineteenth century. This was a time when many exciting new things were invented: steam trains, the telephone, electricity, photographs and much more. The writer Jules Verne (1828-1905) looked at nineteenth century technology and imagined how it could be improved to do amazing things. He wrote about people travelling to the centre of the earth, to the moon or deep under the sea. Many people consider Verne to be the first true science fiction writer.

In 1895, the writer HG Wells (1866-1946) saw technology differently. He wrote about the possible dangers of technology. His books include "The Time Machine", in which the hero travels into a dangerous and unpleasant future. Other writers also thought that technology could be bad. Aldous Huxley's Brave "New World" (1931) is about a future in which people are produced in factories. But not all science fiction writers saw technology as bad. Authors such as Isaac Asimov (1920-1992) often wrote about a future in which science can solve all our problems. Science fiction has evolved with technology. In the 1960s, space was being explored for the first time. [This](#) gave science fiction writers ideas for what explorers might find in space: strange worlds and unexplained mysteries, such as in the novels of Arthur C. Clarke.

More recently, many science fiction stories have been about robots. Could they become more intelligent than people? Should we use them, or could they start to take over and rule the world? In science fiction, anything is possible.

Choose the correct answer from a , b, c, or d:

1 In his novels, Jules Verne wrote about technology

- a- that could make life better
b- that made life dangerous.
c- that people used at that time
d- that could never exist.

2 According to the article, what influenced science fiction writers in the 1960s?

- a- Arthur C. Clarke b- space travel c- unexplained mysteries d- robots**

3 In what way was Isaac Asimov different to many science fiction writers?

- a- He was optimistic about science.
c- He only wrote about space.
- b- He Was pessimistic about science.
d- He only wrote about robots.

4 In conclusion, the text says that in science fiction.....,

- a- technology is good
c- anything might happen
- b- technology is bad.
d- there are never any problems.

5 What does the underlined word **this** refer to?

- a- changes in science fiction b- changes in technology
c- the new year d- space exploration

6 What do you think the phrase "take over" means?

- a- become people b- steal things c- get control of d- hide

7 How did HG Wells describe technology in his book "The Time Machine"?

- a- safe b- useful c- incredible d- dangerous

choose the best translation from English into Arabic.

١- يسبب التدخين أمراض كثيرة من بينها سرطان الرئة والغريب واستمرار المدخنين رغم علمهم بتلك المخاطر.

- a) Smoking causes many diseases, including lung cancer, But the strong thing is smokers` continuity, despite their knowledge of these risks.
- b) Smoking causes many diseases, included lung cancer, but the strange thing is smokers` continuity despite their knowledge of this desks.
- c)Smoking causes a lot of diseases including lung cancer, but the strange thing is smokers` continuity and in spite of their knowledge of these risks.
- d)Smoking causes many diseases, including the longer cancer, but the strange thing is smokers` continuity despite their knowledge of these risks.

choose the best translation from Arabic into English.

Some of the most important aims of education are to build the Egyptian citizen who is able to face the future and create a productive society .

- ١- من أهم أهداف التعليم بناء المواطن المصري القادر على مواجهة المستقبل وخلق مجتمع مستهلك
- ٢- من أهم أهداف التعليم بناء المواطن المصري القادر على مواجهة المستقبل وخلق مجتمع منتج
- ٣- من أهم أهداف التعليم عدم بناء المواطن المصري القادر على مواجهة المستقبل وخلق مجتمع منتج
- ٤- من أصعب أهداف التعليم بناء المواطن المصري القادر على مواجهة المستقبل وخلق مجتمع منتج

5) Write an essay of about 150 words on one only of the following topics:

Life today is better than life in the past.

Unit

Six

Learning from literature

التعلم من الادب

By: Mr El Sebaei Attaya

Vocabulary

hay	تين - قش	however	على ايه حال	verse	بيت شعر
plot	مؤامرة. حبكة	author	مؤلف	title	عنوان - لقب
dig	يحفر	everyday	يومي	clear	واضح
gravel	حصى	daughter	ابنه	rhythm	الوزن الشعري
currant	عنب	weather	الطقس	candle	شمعة
rhythm	الوزن الشعري	gardener	جنايني	dress	يرتدي - فستان
poet	شاعر	path	ممر	quite	الي حد ما
poetry	شعر	pieces	قطع	hop	يتنطط
poem	قصيده	grass	حشائش	grow up	ينمو - يكبر
novel	رواية	follow	يتبع	have to	يجب
lock	يغلق	rules	قواعد	complete	يكمل
rhyme	قافيه - يتناغم	unfriendly	غير ودود	street	شارع
literature	الادب	through	خلال	still	مازال
author	مؤلف	else	اخر	describe	يصف
die	يموت	garden	حديقة	season	فصل
later	فيما بعد	instead	بدلا من	situation	موقف
weather	الطقس	avoid	يتجنب	possibly	من المحتمل
lawyer	محامي	Faculty of arts	كلية الاداب	tools	أدوات
writer	كاتب	trouble	متاعب	dislike	يكره
travel	يسافر	cause	يسبب - سبب	especially	خاصه
warm	دافئ	preparation	اعداد	boring	ممل
improve	يحسن	wedding	حفل زفاف	both	كلا من
a while	لحظه - فتره	busy	مشغول	interesting	شيق
wife	زوجه	comics	مجلة هزليه	activity	نشاط
kidnap	يختطف	niece	بنت الاخ او الاخت	hate	يكره
Pacific Ocean	المحيط	university	الجامعة	outside	خارج
strange	غريب	favour	معروف	fair	عادل
case	حاله	suppose	يفترض	fun	متعه
successful	ناجح	respond	يستجيب	length	طول
treasure	كنز	request	يطلب	clearly	طول
adventure	مغامرة	formal	رسمي	reason	سبب
pirates	قراصنه	informal	غير رسمي	publish	ينشر
popular	محبوب - شعبي	neighbour	جار	publisher	ناشر

Definitions

hay	dried grass that people use to feed animals	
plot	small piece of land for growing things on.	
dig	break up and move earth with your hands or a machine	
gravel	small stones, used to make a surface for paths, roads'	
currant row	a line of plants that have small fruits	
lock	To close something using a key	
rhyme	when words end with the same sound.	
rhythm	a repeated sound in music, poems, etc.	
a novel	a long written story in which the characters and events are usually imaginary'	

a poet	is someone who writes poems	
poetry	is a form of writing	
A poem	Is a piece of writing often arranged in lines that rhyme	

Expressions

at the age of		a full time writer	
decide to		in addition to	
improve his health		on his way home	
best known for		mix with	
Be made into a film		do a favour	
as well as		in winter	
no one else but		popular with	
stay on the path		In the street	
a line of		In different seasons	
different from		have fun	
make a preparation for		have rhythm	
quite the other way		feel differently	
break up		a mind map	
be made into		summer goes	
in different seasons		in an hour	
come from		help with	
arranged in lines		special about ...	
44 years later		Like / Unlike	
wasn't always well		Be outside + v-ing	
become a lawyer		make it easy to	
keep the gravel walk		precious treasure	
grow things on land		everyday life	
put ... away		lay it down	
move earth with		sleep by day	
anything else		get up at night	
masterpiece		bed in summer	
bare and brown		the rhyme is so clever	
get away from		a bit boring	
seem hard		in particular	
away behind		Curran row	
best known for		adventure story	
Pacific Ocean		bare feet	

Language Notes**1- put away** يضع الشيء في مكانه# **put off** يؤجل# **put out** يطفىء- **Put your books away.** - **Don't put off today's work until tomorrow****2- Currant** عنب مجفف- **current****حالي** - **ماء - هواء - كهرباء** (تدفق تيار)**3-Queue** طابور/يقف في طابور لكي يفعل شئ**row** صف من الأشياء أو الناس جنباً إلى جنب**4 -feel (felt) + adj** يشعر ب

-My parents felt happy because I passed the exam

- fall(fell-fallen)

يسقط/ يقع

-I fell off the ladder yesterday.

Fill (filled)...with

يملأ بـ

-He filled the glass with water

Fail (failed)

يفشل في

-He didn't study hard , so he failed the exam

Fail (failed)

ينقطع

-The machine failed around four pm.

5- quiet

هادئ

quite +

الي حد ما

quit

(يهاجر - يغادر) يزوغ

6-everyday (adj) (صفه)

يومي

every day (adv)

(كل يوم) ظرف

7- improve

يحسن - يطور

- prove

يثبت/يبرهن

- remove

يزيل

approve

يوافق

8-At the age of

في عمر

In the age of

في عصر

He won the championship at the age of 16.

He won the championship when he was 16.

We live in the age of technology .

10- roll

يدحرج/يكور

role

دور

- rule

يحكم

11-kidnap

يختطف شخص

Hijack

يختطف طائرة/اتوبيس/سفينة

12 - later

فيما بعد

-latter

ثاني أو آخر

13 -cause

يسبب

What caused the fire?

cause

مفعول

to

يجعل مصدر

The cold weather caused me to sleep early

cause of +

(اسم سبب/مسبب) يؤدي الى نتيجة

What was the cause of the fire?

reason for + v ing

اسم داع - مبرر - سبب

Can you give the reason for leaving ?

reason why +

جملة كاملة

Is there a reason why you can't come?

14-hard (adj.)

مجتهد/صعب/صلب

No one passed the exam. It was hard.

hard (adv.)

بجد/بشدّة/بغزارة/بعنف

Rana studies hard to get high marks

hardly (adv.)

بالكاد/بالصعوبة

There is hardly any water in the glass.

17-favour

معرّوف-جميل

#**favourite #**

مفضل

favoured #

مؤهّب

Favourable-

مفرح

-Can you do me a favour?

-Football is my favourite sport?

-He is favoured at singing.

-She heard favourable news, she must be happy.

Listening text

Teacher: This week, we are studying the Scottish, Robert Louis Stevenson, in particular his poetry not his novels. Have any of you heard about him or read any of his works?

Nesma : Didn't he write **Treasure Island**? I tried reading it last year, but it was a bit boring so I decided to watch the film instead.

Teacher : Did you like it?

Nesma : Yes, it was really good. I love adventure films and I enjoy reading adventure stories too. I just found **Treasure Island** a bit difficult.

Teacher : Well it was written a long time ago. He was born in 1850 and **Treasure Island** was published in 1881. And, Wafaa, have you read any of his books?

Wafaa : I don't think so. I prefer reading romantic stories and poems.

Teacher : Well, Stevenson wrote poems too. In fact, he wrote all kinds of things. He

began writing stories when he was a child and unwell. Unfortunately, Stevenson was often very ill and he **finished writing** **Treasure Island** while he was ill in bed. He **continued to write** more books, **including** a collection of **poems called “A Child’s Garden”** of Verses and he also travelled a lot to get away from the cold Scottish weather.

Nesma : Where did he go?

Teacher : As a young man, he went to Europe, France and Switzerland mainly. **In fact**, his first book was about his travels in France. He and his family **loved sailing** and they **wanted to sail** from America, where they were living, to the South Pacific. The Family chose to build a house in Samoa and the Stevenson Family lived there until he died in 1894.

Learning from Literature

Robert Louis Stevenson was born in Scotland in 1850 and died 44 years later in Samoa, a small island in the South Pacific. He was not always well because the weather in Edinburgh was too cold for him. When he was a child he couldn't always go to school. He studied to become a lawyer at Edinburgh University, but he always wanted to write. At the age of 21 he decided to become a full-time writer. He often travelled to warmer places to try to improve his health. For a while he lived in France and this was where he met his wife, Fanny. She was from the United States, so Stevenson also travelled to America with her.

Although he is best known for his novels, like **"Kidnapped and Strange Case of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde"**, Stevenson also wrote many poems and travel books.

His first successful novel was Treasure Island – an adventure story about pirates. His books are still very popular today and many of them have been made into films.

\$

Poems

The Gardener	Bed in Summer
<p>The gardener does not love to talk. He makes me keep the gravel walk; And when he puts his tools away, He locks the door and takes the key. Away behind the currant row, Where no one else but cook may go, Far in the plots, I see him dig, Old and serious, brown and big. He digs the flowers, green, red, and blue, Nor wishes to be spoken to. He digs the flowers and cuts the hay, And never seems to want to play.</p>	<p>In winter I get up at night And dress by yellow candlelight. In summer quite the other way, I have to go to bed by day. I have to go to bed and see The birds still hopping on the tree, Or hear the grown-up people's feet Still going past me in the street. And does it not seem hard to you, When all the sky is clear and blue, And I should like so much to play, To have to go to bed by day?</p>

[illegible]

My favourite poem is “Bed in Summer” because it describes how I felt when I was young. In the Summer I had to go to bed when it was light and I hated it, like the author I wanted to be outside playing and I didn’t think it was fair that everyone else was outside having fun.

It's **a good length for a poem**, only three verses and I like the fact that the

words rhyme. I don't like poems which don't rhyme. the first two lines rhyme, "night" and "light" and then the next two lines rhyme "way" and "day". This makes it easy to say and easy to remember.

Robert Louis Stevenson was ill when he was a child and he stayed in bed a lot that's why I think he wrote this poem.

[illegible]

Khaled, 4:04 PM

The words Stevenson has used very clearly describe the situations he's writing about and I really like that. I also think the poem's subject is very interesting because everyone feels differently in different seasons. In my opinion, poets should write about everyday life. However, I think the second verse is too long and its rhythm is too slow.

[illegible]

\$\$\$ Hamid, 5:36 PM

I love the language in the poem, especially the way Stevenson describes the light at different times of day. I also think the second verse is great because the rhymes in it are so clever. However, in my opinion, the poem's subject is quite boring because going to bed and getting up aren't very interesting activities. I think poets should write about more exciting things.

Exercises on unit : 6 (Voc.)

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- The window isn't covered by anything, it is
24- Their mother told them not to go out with feet.

a – bare b – well closed c – locked d – closed

2- Small pieces of land used for growing things are

a – plots b – lakes c – ponds d – fountains

3- Farmers use to feed animals.

a – milk b – hay c – pizza d – manure

4- To means to move something in or under soil using a tool.

a – dig b – sing c – swim d – scratch

5- He the door with a key.

a – closed b – locked c – slang d – sting

6- Something that is not clever or sensible

a – silly b – really c – windy d – sandy

7- If you , you get good or useful from a situation.

a – forget b – found c – benefit d – prove

8- It is , it is enjoyable and nice.

a – boring b – bad c – horrible d – pleasant

9- Gold, silver and money hidden in a place

a – pleasure b – treasure c – pressure d – measure

10- The light was off, he used a to see.

a – candle b – bulb c – glasses d – torches

11- The lines that form one part of a poem are

a – verses b – coins c – mobs d – titles

12- the repeated sound in music or poems.

a – verse b – rhythm c – poets d – prose

13- A moving seat that children play on is

a – wing b – bring c – swing d – fling

14- There was no electricity in the house, so we had to use

a – candles b – pandas c – sandals d – wires

15- They found an old ship under the water which they think is full of

a – boats b – treasures c – pilots d – cells

- 16- I don't like this music, it doesn't have any.....
 a – tools b – instrument c – rhythm d – verses
- 17- I enjoy riding a in the park.
 a – swing b – car c – elephant d – ship
- 18- For homework, we have to write the first of the poem.
 a – poets b – poetry c – verse d – chapter
- 19- It was very sitting in the park at the end of a hot day.
 a – boring b – pleasant c – ugly d – silly
- 20- Children love in the sand on the beach.
 a – rigging b – wiggling c – wicking d – digging
- 21- In winter, farmers sometimes give their sheep..... to eat.
 a – fig b – hay c – meat d – milk
- 22- Don't forget to the door when you leave the house.
 a – lock b – log c – look d – open
- 23- The hotels in this city hope to from the new airport.
 a – benefit b – lose c – lie d – breeze
- 24- Their mother told them not to go out with feet.
 a – clean b – bare c – healthy d – long
- 25- My grandfather always has lots of carrots from his vegetable
 a – blog b – flock c – jog d – plot
- 26- Can you me a favour?
 a – make b – did c – does d – do
- 27- My team is Zamalek.
 a – favour b – favoured c – favourite d – favourable
- 28- The teacher made the pupils homework again.
 a – do b – to do c – does d – did
- 29- People were waiting in a to book their tickets.
 a – clue b – row c – blow d – queue
- 30- Could you help me?
 a – possibly b – possible c – improbable d – improbably
- 31- He out of bed and quickly got dressed.
 a – helped b – hopped c – rested d – slept
- 32- Do you think the word moon has the same as the word June ?
 a – rhyme b – poem c – prose d – rhythm
- 33- I want you to some jobs for me .
 a – make b – give c – take d – do
- 34- A row is a line of plants that have small fruits.
 a – current b – currant c – carrot d – curl
- 35- The word **hat** rhymes the word cat.
 a – on b – to c – with d – for
- 36- is small stones, used to make a surface for paths, roads, etc.
 a – Marvel b – Gravel c – Bravery d – Rock
- 37- The two girls when they revised the lesson together.
 a – profited b – lighted c – lost d – fought
- 38- I have read a / an about the author Robert Louis Stevenson.
 a – biography b – autobiography c – photography d – biographical
- 39- Samoa is a small in the south Pacific.
 a – city b – town c – island d – village
- 40- Stevenson is best known for his like kidnapped and treasure island.
 a – poems b – poetry c – plays d – novels
- 41- A is someone who writes poems-
 a – poetry b – poet c – novelist d – playwright
- 42- In my opinion , poets should write about life.
 a – everyday b – to each day c – everyday d – all day

- 43- The poem's subject is boring.
a – quit b – quite c – quiet d – quick
- 44- It is to give the twins the same pocket money.
a – fair b – far c – fare d – unfair
- 45- How many does the poem consist of?
a – rhyme b – rhythm c – verses d – metaphors
- 46- I saw a long in front of the bakery.
a – row b – raw c – queue d – inquire
- 47- The government will provide some for the youth to cultivate.
a – plans b – plots c – pilots d – pots
- 48- I can't enter my car because the keys were inside.
a – locked b – looked c – licked d – baked
- 49- Animals are used to eat grass and
a – hey b – hay c – hoe d – hi
- 50- If you want to plant a new tree , first , you should a big hole.
a – leg b – wide c – dig d – ring
- 51- We use keys to or unlock doors
a – lock b – lick c – deck d – look
- 52- The is the person who looks after plants in a garden.
a – lawyer b – porter c – doctor d – partner
- 53- Don't touch the electric wires otherwise, you will have an electric shock.
a – bare b – covered c – insulated d – isolated
- 54- Children love in the sand on the beach.
a. dogging b. knocking c. drilling d. digging
- 55- In winter, farmers sometimes give their sheep to eat.
a. meat b. hay c. fruits d. pizza
- 56- we spent much time in the street as he.....the door and lost the keys.
a. looked b. locked c. lacked d. leaked
- 58-on herhome, Heba met her friends yesterday.
a-road b-street c-away d-way
- 59-can you.....me a favour , please?
a-give b-make c-do d-send
- 60-My mother was very angry that I didn't put my clothes.....when I took them off.
a-on b-away c-down d-out
- 61-It is strictly against thefor athletes to take drugs.
a-roles b-rules c-rolls d-roads
- 62- The light was off, he used ato see.
a - candle b - bulb c – glasses d – wire
- 63- People were waiting in ato book their tickets.
a-verse b-rhyme c-rhythm d-poem
- 64-I don't like this music. It doesn't have any.....
a - poets b – poetry c – verse d – chapter
- 65- The poem's subject isboring.
a – quit b – quite c – quiet d – quick
- 66- For homework, we have to write the firstof the poem.
a – while b – whilst c – during d – a while
- 67-Novels, poems and plays are different forms of.....
a – literacy b – literary c – literature d – illiteracy
- 68- I intend to stay with my aunt in the countryside for.....
a – while b – whilst c – during d – a while
- 69- I warned my little son not to mixbad friends.
a – by b – to c – of d – with
- 70-The teacher made the pupils..... homework again.
a – do b – to do c – does d – did
- 71-The is the person who looks after plants in a garden

a – partner b – gardener c – porter d – lawyer

72-A daughter of a rich man was for money

a – lost b – stole c – hijacked d – kidnapped

73-When she saw the snake on the wall, she.....frightened.

a – fell b – felt c – filled d – failed

74-It seemsto do all this work alone. I need your help.

a – easiness b – easily c – hard d – hardly

75-Salah is popular.....millions of people all over the world.

a – with b – to c – for d – as

76- He expresses his idea.....

a – clear b – clarity c – clearness d – clearly

77- Did you have any finding your way to the new school?

a – trouble b – terrible c – trip d – tribe

78-My health finally began to when I changed to a less stressful job

a – approve b – improve c – prove d – remove

79-I've read one of her books, but I can't remember the

a – dress b – address c – headline d – title

80-A.....a long written story in which the characters and events are usually imaginary

a – hay b – verse c – line d – novel

82- They came to the driveway today to make it available for walking.

a) discover b) gravel c) ease d) prove

83- I was against the idea at first, but I to it eventually.

a) refused b) accepted c) disagreed d) warmed

84- I like playing tennis and my son likes it

a) either b) neither c) too d) so

85- The information you are looking for on the internet.

a) finds b) is found c) are found d) can be finding

86- They don't want to travel to Canda and

a) so do I b) Neither am I c) Nor I do d) Neither do I

Grammar

VERBS + (TO + INF.) OR (V.ING)

1- Verbs followed by (v.+ ing)

enjoy

mind

finish

come

go

Suggest=propose

consider

Can't stand

involve

keep

spend

reject

يستمع

يُمانع

ينهي

يأتي

يذهب

يقترح

يفكر

لا يتحمل

يشتمل

يحافظ

يقضي

ينبذ

miss

prevent

practise

give up

put off

delay

detest

regret

include

hate

quit

anticipate

يفتقد

يمنع

يمارس

يقلع

عن

يؤجل

يؤجل

يشتمن

يندم

يتضمن

يكره

يتوقف عن

يتوقع

deny

Admit=confess

imagine

fancy

can't stand

avoid

resist

postpone

risk

recommend

appreciate

adore

ينكر

يعترف بـ

يتخيل /

يتصور

يتخيل /

لا يطيق

يتجنب

يقاوم

يؤجل

يجازف

يوصي بـ

يقدر

يعشق

Examples:

- They **enjoyed watching** TV - He **kept working** for long hours.
 - She **risks climbing** mounts. - Tom **suggested / recommends going** to the cinema
 - You should **avoid going out** at night. - I don't **mind helping** you.
 - Have you **finished reading** the newspaper yet? - I **suggest taking** some time off.
 - I need to **practise speaking** English more often. - I **can't stand listening** to this loud music.

2- Verbs followed by (to + inf.)

- بعض الأفعال يأتي بعدها دائماً (مصدر + to)

agree	يوافق	threaten	يهدد	manage	يتمكن
arrange	يرتب	want	يريد	deserve	يستحق
decide	يقرر	learn	يتعلم	demand	يطلب
expect	يتوقع	offer	يعرض	refuse	يرفض
hope	يأمل	plan	يخطط	intend	ينوي
would like/ love	يود - يرغب	promise	يعد	seem	يبدو
'd prefer	يفضل	dare (to)	يجرؤ	afford	يتحمل
Fail	يفشل	tend	يتولى امر	attempt	يحاول
pretend	يتظاهر	appear	يظهر	Wish	يتمنى

Examples:

- We **hope to hear** from you soon. - My friend **offered to lend** me what I want.
 - I'd like to travel to France someday. - He **promised to call** me back as soon as possible.
 - I **need to go** to the supermarket to buy some bread.
 - We're **planning to have** a big party on my daughter's marriage.
 - He **promised not to come** late again. - They **decided not to go** out .

3- Verbs + object + (to + inf.)

- بعض الأفعال يأتي بعدها دائماً (مصدر + to + مفعول)

expect	يتوقع	cause	يجعل	persuade	يُقنع
want	يريد	tell	يُخبر	warn	يُحذر
order	يطلب	promise	يعد	inform	يُخبر / يُبلغ
ask	يسأل / يطلب	train	يُدرّب	force	يُجبر
invite	يدعو	enable	يُمكن	motivate	يحفز

Examples:

- My teacher **advised us to study** harder. - He didn't **allow us** enough time **to finish** the test.
 - Do you think Dad will **allow you to go** to Amal's party?
 - They **invited us to have** lunch with them.
 - The bad weather **forced people to stay** at home all day.
 - I **persuaded her to start** a new website.

- بعض من الأفعال في هذه المجموعة يأتي بعدها (مصدر + to) بدون مفعول بدون تغيير في المعنى

- She **promised her father to do** her best. = She **promised to do** her best.

- أحيانا يؤثر حذف المفعول على المعنى عندما لا يوجد مفعول

- We **expect Sara to arrive** early. (Sara will arrive early)
 - We **expect to arrive** early. (We will arrive early)

- بعض من الأفعال في هذه المجموعة يأتي بعدها (مصدر + how to + مفعول)

- Ali **showed us how to reach** the station.
- We **teach students (how) to read and write**.

- عند بناء الجملة للمجهول يأتي بعد هذه الأفعال (مصدر + to)

- The bad weather **forced people to stay** at home all day. (Active)
- **People were forced to stay** at home all day by the bad weather. (Passive)

- الأفعال (let / make) يأتي بعدهما (مصدر + مفعول)

- She **wanted to go** home, but her boss **made her stay** until the work was finished.
- My boss **let me have** the afternoon off to go to my sister's wedding.

- عند بناء الفعل (make) للمجهول يأتي بعده (مصدر + to)

- She **wanted to go** home, but She **was made to stay** until the work was finished.

- الفعل (help) يأتي بعده (مصدر + مفعول) أو (مصدر + to + مفعول)

- He can **help me understand** this lesson. = - He can **help me (to) understand** this lesson.

4- Verbs followed by (v.+ ing) / (مصدر + to + مفعول)

- بعض الأفعال يأتي بعدها (v.ing) أو (مصدر + to + مفعول)

advise	ينصح	encourage	يشجع
allow	يسمح / يأذن	recommend	يوصي بـ
permit	يسمح / يأذن	forbid	يمنع

Examples:

- They **advise walking** to town.
- They **do not allow smoking** here.
- They **encourage doing** the test.
- They **do not permit smoking** here.
- They **advise her to walk** to town.
- They **do not allow us to smoke** here.
- They **encourage Ali to do** the test.
- They **do not permit me to smoke**

5- Verbs followed by (v.+ ing) / (مصدر + to) with no change in meaning

- بعض الأفعال يأتي بعدها (v.ing) أو (مصدر + to) بدون اختلاف تقريباً من حيث المعنى

start / begin	يبدأ	prefer	يفضل
like	يحب	hate	يكره
love	يحب	continue	يستمر

Examples:

- We **like to watch / watching** tennis.
- The baby **started to cry**.
- Do you **hate working** on Saturdays?
- = - The baby **started crying**.
- = - Do you **hate to work** on Saturdays?

6- Verbs followed by (v.+ ing) / (مصدر + to) with a change in meaning

- بعض الأفعال يأتي بعدها (v.ing) أو (مصدر + to) مع وجود اختلاف كبير من حيث المعنى

1- stop + (to + inf.)

- I **stopped to buy** a newspaper. : - I **stopped in order to buy** a newspaper.)
- **stop + (v. + ing)** يتوقف عن فعل شيء
- I **stopped buying** a newspaper. : - I no longer buy one.)

2- remember + (to + inf.)

- He **remembered to see** the man. : - He remembered and then saw the man.
- **remember + (v. + ing)** يتذكر ما فعله في الماضي

- He **remembered seeing** the man. :

- He saw the man and later remembered.

3- forget + (to + inf.)

ينسى أن يفعل شيء ما (أي لم يفعل الشيء)

- He **forgot to lock** the door. :

- He didn't lock it.

- forget + (v. + ing)

ينسى أنه قد فعل شيء ما

- He **forgot locking** the door. :

- He locked it but couldn't remember.

4- try + (to + inf.)

يُحاول (يُبذل مجهود لكي يفعل شيء ما)

- I **tried to see** over the fence by standing on tiptoe.

- try + (v. + ing)

يُجرب ليري ما سيحدث

- A: This coffee is too hot.

B: **Try putting** some ice in it.

5- regret + (to + inf.)

يأسف أنه مضطر أن يفعل شيء ما

- We **regret to say** that we cannot help you at the moment.

- regret + (v. + ing)

يندم على شيء فعله في الماضي

- I **regret quitting** my job. It was a stupid thing to do.

6- need + v+ ing = need +to + be+ p.p) (Passive)

My car needs (repairing =to be repaired)

7- need + to+ infinitive = need +noun (active)

I need a car =to buy a car

* ملحوظات هامة:

١- يمكن أن نستخدم (مصدر + to) للتعبير عن الغرض

- I study hard **to get** good marks.

- She is driving quickly **to arrive** on time.

- هنا (to = in order to = so as to) بمعنى (لكي)

- He completed all his homework **to get a good grade.**

٢- هناك تعبيرات يأتي بعدها (v.ing)

It's no good

لا فائدة من

- It **is no good telling** him - he won't listen.

It's no use

لا فائدة من

- It's **no use worrying** about your exams.

feel like

يرغب في

- I **feel like going** to the beach.

can't help

لا يمكنه التوقف عن

- She **couldn't help falling** in love with him..

can't stand

لا يطيق

- I **can't stand listening** to this loud music.

spend his time

يقضي وقته

- He always **spends his time studying** hard.

waste his time

يضيع وقته

- She always **wastes her time playing** chess.

There's no point in

لا داعي لـ

- There's **no point in buying** a car if you can't drive.

be busy

مشغول في

- She was **too busy doing** her homework.

It's worth

What about= how about

It's fun

I've difficulty in

٣- حروف الجر تتبع دائما بـ(اسم / ضمير / v.ing)

accuse ..sb. .. of

يتهم بـ

prevent ..sb. .. from

يمنع من

charge ..sb. .. with

يتهم بـ

protect ..from / against

يحمي من

apologize to ..sb. .. for

يعتذر عن شيء

rely on = depend on

يعتمد على

blame ..sb. .. for

يلوم علي

search for

يبحث عن

complain about

يشكو من

succeed in

ينجح في

concentrate on

يركز علي

talk about

يتحدث عن

do without

يستغني عن

tell ..sb. .. about

يخبر شخص عن

hear about / of

يسمع عن warn ..sb. .. about

يحذر من

- They **accused me of stealing** their money. - I must **apologize to him for arriving late**.
- She always **complains about** my delay.

٤- يمكن أن نستخدم (to) كحرف جر و يأتي بعده (اسم / ضمير / v.ing) مع التعبيرات

الآتية

look forward to	يتطلع إلى	object to	يعترض على
be used to	معتاد علي	devote... to	يكرس لـ
be accustomed to	معتاد علي	be committed to	ملتزم بـ
take to	يولع بـ - يتحمس لـ	due to=owing to	بسبب
contribute to		adjust to	
in addition to		lead to	
(be) exposed to		confess to	
Opposed to		own up to	

- I **look forward to spending** the holidays in Sharm. - I **am used to waiting** for buses.
- My mother **devoted her life to helping** the boys. - She **didn't take to studying** English.

٥- نستخدم (مصدر + to) بعد الصفات الدالة على المشاعر التالية

disappointed , glad , happy , pleased , relieved , sad , surprised

- I was **happy to help** them.
- She **will be delighted to see** you.

٦- نستخدم (مصدر + to) مع الجمل التي تبدأ بـ (صفة + It's)

- It was **difficult to complete** the rough draft.
- She thought it was **impossible to remember** all the rules.

٧- (مصدر + to) في المجهول تصبح (to be + pp.)

- He **hopes to be treated** well at school.

٨- (v.ing) في المجهول تصبح (being + pp.)

- I **remember being carried to** hospital after the accident.

٩- الأفعال التالية الدالة على الإدراك يأتي بعدها (v.ing) عندما نذكر جزء من الحدث

hear	يسمع	notice	يلاحظ
see	يرى	watch	يشاهد

- I **heard Huda sing** a song. (This means that I heard the whole song.)
- I **heard Huda singing** a song. (This means that I heard part of the song.)

١١- أفعال تتبع ب المصدر بدون ()

Let - make - dare - help

- 1- Ali **let me use** his car.
- 2- He can't **dare take** my things.

EXERCISES ON GRAMMAR

- 1-I like (do - done - does - doing) exercise every day.
- 2-I hate (to get - gets - got - to getting) water in my eyes.
- 3-They are going home as soon as they have finished (to work - works - working - worked).
- 4-They hope (to get - getting - of getting - get) a job they enjoy doing.
- 5-I learnt (swim - to swim - swam - to swimming) when I was three years old.
- 6-He dislikes (sleeps - slept - to sleeping - sleeping) during the day.
- 7-The children enjoyed (to play - with playing - playing - played) in the sea.
- 8-He admitted (to borrow - borrow - borrowed - borrowing) my pen without asking me.
- 9-The driver of the car (avoided - planned - offered - hoped) hitting the motorbike.
- 10-I've tried (read - with reading - to read - reads) that book, but I don't understand it.
- 11-Do you want (coming - came - comes - to come) to my party.

- 12-What do you (avoid - plan - finish - practise) to do in the summer?
- 13-She offered (helping - help - to help - helped) her mother prepare lunch.
- 14-Ali has decided (studying - studied - of studying - to study) science at university.
- 15-The boys have arranged (to play - playing - play - plays) football after school.
- 16-He stopped (to listen - listening - listened - listen) to the radio on hearing a knock on the door.
- 17-I never forget (find - to find - finding - found) that rare old coin in the garden. I was 12 then.
- 18-She was doing exercise, then she stopped (listening - to listen - listened - listen) to the radio.
- 19-I remember (phoning - to phone - phoned - phones) my cousin in America a month ago. He told me a lot about his stay there.
- 20-Did you remember (posted - post - to post - posting) my letter? - Oh, I completely forgot.
- 21- I have always regretted (not having - not to have - have - not have) studied harder at school.
- 21-British Airways regret (announce - announced - to announce - announces) the cancellation of flight BA205 to Madrid.
- 23-They expect thousands of people (visiting - visited - to visit - visits) Sapporo for the Snow Festival
- 24-My brother is learning (playing - play - plays - to play) the oud.
- 25-Musicians practise (to play - playing - being played - play) their instruments for hours a day.
- 26-She was really pleased (seen - seeing - see - to see) her old friend.
- 27-He is considering (to go - to going - of going - going) to London this year.
- 28-He refused (answer - to answer - answering - for answer) my questions.
- 29-The salesman denied (taking - to take - takes - take) money from the lady.
- 30-I regretted (criticize - to criticize - criticizing - to criticizing) her in public.
- 31-When they came to a cafeteria, they stopped (eating - to eat - to eating - to be eaten).
- 32-I don't fancy (watch - watched - watches - watching) that film. There is a lot of violence in it.
- 33-He wanted the money (for pay - to pay - pay - paying) for his son's education.
- 34-His parents warned him (not leaving - not left - not to be left - not to leave) university without a degree.
- 35-She's training hard (won - winning - to win - of winning) the race.
- 36-The programme presenter asked Dr. Carter (talk - talking - to talk - talked) about Steinbeck's early life.
- 37-Leila asked Mona whether she could help her (do - to doing - done - to be done) the shopping.
- 38-I recommend (to write - writing - written - write) your feelings down on paper.
- 39.When the children stopped (singing-to sing-sung-sang), everyone clapped. They liked the song very much.
- 40.They expect thousands of people (visiting-visited-to visit-visits) Sapporo for the Snow Festival next year.
- 41.My brother is learning (playing-play-plays-to play) the oud.
- 42.If I were you, I'd avoid (travelling-to travel-travels-travel) into the city during the festival.
- 43.My parents suggested (go-to go-goes-going) to the theatre.
- 44.I really want (going-go-to go-went) to Hong Kong for the Chinese New Year.
- 45.Before you go to London, you should practise (speak-to speak-spoken-speaking) English.
- 46.Leila stopped (to listen-listening-listened-to listening) to the radio when she had heard a loud knock on the door.
- 47.I'll never forget (found-to find-finding-founded) that rare old coin in the garden. I was only 12 then.
- 48.She was doing exercise, then she stopped (listening-to listen-listened-listen) to the radio.
- 49.I remember (phoning-to phone-phoned-phones) my cousin in America a month ago. He told me a lot about his stay there.
- 50.Did you remember (posted-post-to post-posting) my letter? - Oh, I completely forgot.
- 51.I have always regretted (not having-not to have-have-not have) studied harder at school.
- 52.The band stopped (to play-playing-play-played) and there was silence.
- 53.She agreed (write-to write-writing-wrote) an article on classical music.
- 54.Ali shouldn't risk (to drive-drive-driving-drove) so fast.
- 55.I hate (to sit-sitting-to sitting-sit) doing nothing - I'd rather be working.
- 56.Don't forget (locking-lock-locked-to lock) the door when you leave.
- 58.I (deny-dislike-regret-miss) leaving early yesterday. I wish I had stayed to meet you.

59. Mona promised (she comes-to come-coming-will come) and she usually keeps her promises.
60. I can't stand (to listen-listen-listening-to listening) to him.
61. He stopped (write-to write-written-writing) and put down his pen.
62. I tried (stop-to stop-stopping-stopped) him, but he had already left.
63. The thief got into the house because I forgot (closing-closed-to close-to closing) the window.
64. He regretted (leaving-to leave-left-leaves) his job as he couldn't find another one.
65. She couldn't help (to cry-cries-cry-crying) aloud the moment she saw the accident.
66. She deserved (win-winning-to win-won) the first prize.
67. Do you enjoy (listen-to listen-listening-listened) to music?
68. Walid began (to play-plays-played-playing) the guitar when the phone rang.
69. Walid began (playing-to play-plays-played) the guitar when he was six.
70. Would you mind (to lend-lends-lending-lent) me this CD.
71. Do you regret (to go-goes-going-went) to the concert?
72. I've decided (learn-to learn-learning-learned) the piano.
73. He is considering (to go-to going-of going-going) to America this year.
74. He refused (answer-to answer-answering-for answering) my questions.
75. The salesman denied (taking-to take-takes-take) money from the lady.
76. I regretted (criticize-to criticize-criticizing-to criticizing) her in public.
77. When they came to a cafeteria, they stopped (eating-to eat-to eating-to be eaten).
78. I don't fancy (watch-watched-watches-watching) that film. There is a lot of violence in it.
79. -She managed(solve - solving - solves - solved) the problem.
80. -She doesn't feel like (to work - work - working - worked) on the computer.
81. -Everyone stops (to buy - buy - buying - buys) a ticket to attend the show tonight.
82. He would prefer to(fly - to fly - to flying - flying) to Europe.
83. My friend suggested (went - go - going - to go) for a picnic on the beach.
84. -Leila promised (to phone - phoning - to phoning -phoned) her mother .
85. She loves (cooked - to cook - be cooked - cook) for her family.
86. Do you expect (to finish - finishing - finished- finish) your work early today?
87. Musicians practise (to play - playing - played- play) their instruments for many hours a day
88. When studying you should remember----- a break every twenty-five minutes.
a) to take b) taking c) to take d) took
89. -You have to stop(to use- using - used - uses) email because it is old-fashioned.
90. You need to (be kept - keeping - keep- am keeping) your mind and body healthy.
91. You should stop to(checked - check- checking checks) social media while you're studying.
92. Suddenly everyone stopped There was silence.
a) talk b) talking c) to talk d) talked
93. You should practise English all the time.
a) speak b) to speak c) speaks d) speaking
94. When he told us the story, we just couldn't stop
a) laugh b) to laugh c) laughing d) laughed
95. Tamer and I agreed seven pounds each.
a) paying b) pay c) to pay d) was paying
96. Selim is so funny. He stoppedtelevision because he said it was rotting his brain.
a) to watch b) is watching c) watch d) watching
97. Kareem finished his dinner at 6.30.
a) to have eaten b) to eat c) eating d) eaten
98. Amina admitted not how to open the door.
a) to be known b) knowing c) to know d) known
99. Hany and his sister practise tennis every day after school.
a) playing b) to play c) played d) play
100. I regret you that Nabil will not be joining the team. I know you wanted him with us.
a) telling b) to tell c) have told d) am telling
101. I (deny - dislike - regret - miss) leaving early yesterday. I wish I had stayed to meet you.

- 102-I can't stand (to listen – listen – listening – to listening) to him.
 103-He stopped (write – to write – written – writing) and put down his pen.
 104-The thief got into the house because I forgot (closing – closed – to close – to closing) the window.
 105-She couldn't help (to cry – cries – cry – crying) aloud the moment she saw the accident.
 106-She deserved (win – winning – to win – won) the first prize.
 107-He began (to play – plays – played – playing) the guitar when the phone rang.
 108-He began (playing – to play – plays – played) the guitar when he was six.
 109.Nehad regrets her mother on her birthday. She should have done it.
 a) not phone b) not phoned c) not phoning d) not to phone
 110.If I were you, I'd avoid into the city during the festival.
 a) travels b) to travel c) travelling d) of traveling
 111.Before you go to London, you should practise English.
 a) speak b) speaking c) to speaking d) speaks
 112.I suggest..... to the Sham El-Nessim festival in Egypt next year.
 a) to go b) to going c- go d) going
 113.I suggest that he to the Sham El-Nessim festival in Egypt next year.
 a) to go b) to going c) go d) going
 114.Fatma is looking forward to university next year.
 a) starting b) starting c) starts d) started
 115.On their way to Luxor, the tourists stopped some photos of an ancient temple.
 a) to take b) take c) taking d) to taking
 116.Do you regret not the museum when you were in Cairo?
 a) to visit b) visited c) visit d) visiting
 117.Munir was a soldier so he is used to ... a lot of time outdoors.
 a) spend b) spends c) spending d) spent
 118-. I startedfor the bank twenty years ago .
 a) work b) worked c) working d) to working
 119.. When I was a child, I used to imagine..... a pilot
 a) becoming b) to become c) becomes d) become
 120. John mailed the letter and rememberedit later.
 a) mailing b) to mail c) to mailing d) mails

72- "Omar got used to living on his own." This means Omar

- a. can't live alone b. hates living on his own
 c. doesn't live on his own d. took to living alone

73- Which of the following is NOT correct ?

- a. The match ended when one of the two players gave up to the other.
 b. The match ended when one of the two players gave up.
 c. The match ended when one of the two players gave to the other up.
 d. a & b

74- Which of the following does not have a phrasal verb ?

- a. The charger is plugged in. b. Omar looked at his sister.
 c. My mobile is switched off. d. I knew that my PC had been left on.

75- "He doesn't smoke anymore." This means

- a. he stopped to smoke. b. he stopped smoking.
 c. he has never smoked. d. a & c

76- "I remembered to call my mother before going to bed." What does this mean ?

- a. I remembered calling my mother. b. I remember that I call my mother.
 c. First I remembered, then I called my mother.
 d. First I called my mother, then I remembered.

77- "I have forgotten to bring my camera." This means

- a. it is not with me now. b. it is with me now.
 c. I have forgotten bringing it. d. a & c

78- "It is impossible for me to stop watching football matches." What does this mean ?

- a. I am busy watching football matches. b. I can't help watching football matches.
c. It is no use watching football matches. d. It is no good watching football matches.

79- "Omar got used to living on his own." Omar

- a. can't live alone b. hates living on his own
c. doesn't live on his own d. took to living alone

80- "I advise my students to understand, not to memorize." This means

- a. My students are advised to memorize and understand.
b. My students are advised to memorize not to understand.
c. My students are advised not to memorize but to understand.
d. My students are advised not to memorize or understand.

81- "I heard a bird singing." What does this mean ?

- a. I heard a bird sing. b. A bird was heard singing.
c. A bird was heard to sing. d. A bird was heard to singing.

Test Six

1- Choose the Two (2) correct answers out of the Five (5) options given:

1. When a house is n't easy to break into, it is well-.....

- a. furnished b. dressed c. protected d. defended e. known

2. All people were shouting in joy when Mu Salah scored a goal. "Joy" means.....

- a. happiness b. sadness c. sorrow d. pleasure e. aggression

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1- I saw a long ----- in front of the bakery

- a) row b) raw c) queue d) inquire

2- The government will provide some ----- for the youth to cultivate.

- a) plans b) plots c) pilots d) pots

3- I can't enter my car because the keys were ----- inside.

- a) locked b) looked c) licked d) baked

4- Animals are used to eat grass and -----

- a) hey b) hay c) hoe d) high

5- If you want to plant a new tree, first, you should ----- a big hole.

- a) leg b) wide c) dig d) ring

6- Postmen stopped ----- letters in our area.

- a) delivering b) deliver c) to deliver d) delivery

7- My little daughter refused ----- her mother with the housework.

- a) helping b) to help c) help d) being helped

8- Don't forget ----- me a tube of toothpaste if you pass a pharmacy.

- a) buy b) buying c) to buy d) being bought

9- I can't stand ----- to silly people.

- a) talking b) to talk c) talk d) being talking

10- If I were you, I would avoid (meeting - to be met - to meet - being met) by her.

11- Mr Hesham practises ----- the piano very well.

- a) play b) to play c) playing d) to playing

12- The gardener is a (play - poem - film - novel) written by Louis Stevenson

13- Gold, silver and money hidden in a place.....

- a - pleasure b - treasure c - pressure d - measure

14- The (lawyer - porter - doctor - partner) is the person who looks after plants in a garden.

(3) Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer:

Technology has changed people and their lives. No period in history has had as many significant changes as the past century. Improvements of all kinds such as those in communication and transportation have seriously changed people's lives- not positively. Some people don't like the results of technology. They often resist the new. They might prefer

to take trains instead of planes and receive letters instead of phone calls or e-mails.

Computers are an obvious part of technology that reach into most people's lives. A computer can easily perform simple and complex calculations. It can record all kinds of information. It can sort material either alphabetically or in number sequence.

It can classify, report and edit information that is put in. The only requirement is that the computer must be correctly programmed to perform these functions or jobs. A computer programmer uses special languages to control and instruct the different parts of the computer. Computers have so many everyday uses that the business world would stop without them. They can, for example, reserve aeroplane tickets, keep bank accounts and record grocery items. All of these jobs can be done in a fraction of the time that a person would need. The investment of time and patience that a person makes in learning how to use a computer pays off many times. Computers save great amounts of time by doing uninteresting jobs that take people a long time. Computers are designed for repetitive projects, for processing and storing a large amount of data, and for accuracy and speed. By using computers, human beings can free themselves to do more human projects.

1. One of the following is NOT mentioned in the passage as a job that a computer can do.....

- a. storing data
- b. giving more time for human projects
- c. reserving plane tickets
- d. paving the way to human relationships

2. Some people react negatively to technology as they

- a. like modern things
- b. prefer traditional things
- c. avoid old inventions
- d. keeping away from ancient discoveries

3. What does the writer mean by the underlined words "pays off"?

- a. brings benefit
- b. causes delay
- c. wastes time
- d. harms people

4. Find 2 words from the text which mean to put things or people into groups according to their type, size, age etc.....

- a. reserve, design
- b. sort, classify
- c. record, edit
- d. instruct, keep

5. To get the most correct output, a computer requires.....

- a. great amounts of time
- b. a limited amount of data
- c. a high degree of patience
- d. highly accurate programmes

6. Without computers,

- a. complex calculations would be easier
- b. life would be much more difficult
- c. communication would be more developed
- d. making use of time would be better

7. The best title for this passage can be.....

- a. Technology in the past centuries
- b. Computers, Past and Present
- c. Computers and Man
- d. Unwelcome Guest

Choose the best translation

١- تعاني مصر من زياده هائله في السكان والتي تسبب الكثير من المشاكل الخطيره وتعوق التنمية الاقتصاديه

A-Egypt is suffering from an enormous increase in pollution, which causes a lot of serious problems and hinders economic development.

B-Egypt is suffering from an enormous decrease in population, which causes a lot of serious problems and hinders economic development.

C-Egypt is suffering from an enormous increase in population, which causes a lot of serious problems and hinders economical development.

D-Egypt is suffering from an enormous increase in population, which causes a lot of serious problems and hinders economic development.

1. Youth not only represent the future of their country, but they are the main agent of change and progress.

- A. لا يمثل مستقبل الشباب بلدهم فحسب، بل هم العامل الرئيسي للتغيير والتقدم.
- B. لا يمثل الشباب مستقبل بلدهم فحسب، بل هم العامل الرئيسي للتعبير والتقدم.
- C. لا يمثل الشباب مستقبل بلدنا فحسب، بل هم العامل الرئيسي للتغيير والتقدم.
- D. لا يمثل الشباب مستقبل بلدهم فحسب، بل هم العامل الرئيسي للتغيير والتقدم.

5. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic:(5 Marks)

How to make our cities beautiful

Revision D

Penfriends

Communication is easy today. Many people use **apps** on their **smartphones** to talk to their friends. When we send a message to a friend, we **take it for granted** that he or she will **reply** very soon. Before the internet, people wrote letters and many people had **penfriends**. These were people they did not always meet, but people chose to write to them about their lives. The letters sometimes **took** a long time **to arrive**, but penfriends were very **popular**. An example is Nellie Roberts and Daphne Meech. These two Australian women are now 90 years old. They first decided to write to each other in the **1930s**, and are now perhaps the longest two people ever to be friends. Nellie Roberts first had penfriends when she was 10, but only one penfriend continued to write to her. Like Nellie, Daphne lived on a farm and the two women enjoyed writing about their lives. **As well as** letters, they sent **each other** black and white photos. They did not meet until 1962, 30 years after their first letter. Nellie still prefers writing letters, and says that she is never going to use **technology** to communicate.

Surprisingly, there are now many **online clubs** for penfriends. They **encourage** people **to write** letters to penfriends around the world, and they are very **successful**. Many say that writing letters is **relaxing** and a **warmer** way to **communicate** than **with** an email or text. You do not need apps, **passwords** or **anti-virus software**. As Nellie says, "*Just a pen and paper will do.*"

Reader's reviews of one of Robert Louis Stevenson's novels:

A fantastic adventure story!

In my opinion, Robert Louis Stevenson's *Kidnapped* is not as *Treasure Island* or as exciting as *The Strange Case of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde*, but it is full of action and really fun. I enjoyed it very much. The story happens in 1751 and it begins when seventeen-year-old David Balfour goes to stay with his mysterious uncle in Scotland. His uncle is a cruel man and he tricks David. He arranges for a ship to take David away to America. However, David manages to escape with a friend and that is just the start of their adventures. I recommend this book to everyone who likes adventure stories.

James (UK)

Not the best book for me

As far as I'm concerned, this book is too old-fashioned. The story is interesting and there is a lot of action, but I don't think the characters are very real. David Balfour is a seventeen-year-old boy, but his life is very different from mine. The language is also old-fashioned. I prefer to read more modern books. *Kidnapped* is just not my kind of book.

Peter (Canda)

My favourite book!

Kidnapped has so much **action** and **adventure**! This really is my **favourite** book. David Balfour's uncle tries to **send** him **away** to America on a ship, but David escapes and **makes friends with** a man called Alan Breck. **Together** they travel through Scotland and face many dangerous and exciting **situations**. I love all the **details** about the places they visit. You can really feel like you are in Scotland. I will **definitely** read this book again.

Tara (Ireland)

Interviewer : Hello, today I'm talking to Professor Marwan Shabana, a history teacher at the University of Cairo. He's just written a very interesting book about the future of technology. And it's not all good news, is it Professor?

Professor : That's true, although no one knows what will happen in the future, of course!

Interviewer : What are you worried about?

Professor : Well, there was a time in history when very few people wrote about what happened in their lives. We call these the Dark Ages, because we don't know much about this time. I'm worried that we are going to have an information Dark Age in the future.

Interviewer : *Why is that?*

Professor : Today we use computer technology for almost all our information. We use computers for our writing, photographs, music and films. This is fantastic, of course, but what will happen to it in the future? The technology of today quickly becomes old. I think that we'll lose a lot of material because new technology won't be able to read it.

Interviewer : *But we'll copy all the important information onto our new technology, won't we?*

Professor : I agree, we will. But history teaches us that there are some things we don't think are important today that will be very important in the future. These are the things I worry that we will lose. People won't think something is important to save, or we will forget the passwords to give us this information.

Interviewer : *What can we do about this?*

Professor : In my opinion, we need to print more, like we did in the past. Look in a museum and you will see wonderful old paintings, photographs, maps and so on. With care, these will be with us for a long, long time

Interviewer : *So, do you think old technology is better than new technology?*

Professor : I'm not so sure about that! Of course, we need new technology, but will the software that we use today be on the computers of tomorrow? We need old technology as well. For example, my father kept all of his letters to my mother before they married. I don't have any of the emails I sent to my wife, because we don't usually keep emails! I think we need to print more information as well as keeping it on a computer. Then we won't have another Dark Age.

Interviewer : *It's an interesting idea. Thank you for talking to us.*